



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁷ : C07K 14/47, A61K 38/17, G01N 33/68, A61P 25/28		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 00/52048
			(43) International Publication Date: 8 September 2000 (08.09.00)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US00/05574		(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).	
(22) International Filing Date: 3 March 2000 (03.03.00)			
(30) Priority Data: 60/122,736 4 March 1999 (04.03.99) US			
(71) Applicant: PRAECIS PHARMACEUTICALS INCORPORATED [US/US]; One Hampshire Street, Cambridge, MA 02139 (US).			
(72) Inventors: FINDEIS, Mark, A.; Apartment 3A, 45 Trowbridge Street, Cambridge, MA 02138 (US). PHILLIPS, Kathryn; 73 Mount Vernon Street, Boston, MA 02108 (US). OLSON, Gary, L.; 1505 Coles Avenue, Moutaininside, NJ 07092 (US). SELF, Christopher; 32 Natalie Drive, West Caldwell, NJ 07006 (US).			
(74) Agents: KARA, Catherine, J. et al.; Lahive & Cockfield, LLP, 28 State Street, Boston, MA 02109 (US).			

Published

With international search report.

Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.

(54) Title: **MODULATORS OF BETA-AMYLOID PEPTIDE AGGREGATION COMPRISING D-AMINO ACIDS**

(57) Abstract

Compounds that modulate natural β amyloid peptide aggregation are provided. The modulators of the invention comprise a peptide, preferably based on a β amyloid peptide, that is comprised entirely of D-amino acids. Preferably, the peptide comprises 3-5 D-amino acid residues and includes at least two D-amino acid residues independently selected from the group consisting of D-leucine, D-phenylalanine and D-valine. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the peptide is a retro-inverso isomer of a β amyloid peptide, preferably a retro-inverso isomer of $A\beta_{17-21}$. In certain embodiments, the peptide is modified at the amino-terminus, the carboxy-terminus, or both. Preferred amino-terminal modifying groups alkyl groups. Preferred carboxy-terminal modifying groups include an amide group, an acetate group, an alkyl amide group, an aryl amide group or a hydroxy group. Pharmaceutical compositions comprising the compounds of the invention, and diagnostic and treatment methods for amyloidogenic diseases using the compounds of the invention, are also disclosed.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia			SG	Singapore		

MODULATORS OF BETA-AMYLOID PEPTIDE AGGREGATION COMPRISING D-AMINO ACIDS

Background of the Invention

Alzheimer's disease (AD), first described by the Bavarian psychiatrist Alois Alzheimer in 1907, is a progressive neurological disorder that begins with short term memory loss and proceeds to disorientation, impairment of judgment and reasoning and, ultimately, dementia. The course of the disease usually leads to death in a severely debilitated, immobile state between four and 12 years after onset. AD has been estimated to afflict 5 to 11 percent of the population over age 65 and as much as 47 percent of the population over age 85. The societal cost for managing AD is upwards of 80 billion dollars annually, primarily due to the extensive custodial care required for AD patients. Moreover, as adults born during the population boom of the 1940's and 1950's approach the age when AD becomes more prevalent, the control and treatment of AD will become an even more significant health care problem. Currently, there is no treatment that significantly retards the progression of the disease. For reviews on AD, see Selkoe, D.J. *Sci. Amer.*, November 1991, pp. 68-78; and Yankner, B.A. *et al.* (1991) *N. Eng. J. Med.* 325:1849-1857.

It has recently been reported (Games *et al.* (1995) *Nature* 373:523-527) that an Alzheimer-type neuropathology has been created in transgenic mice. The transgenic mice express high levels of human mutant amyloid precursor protein and progressively develop many of the pathological conditions associated with AD.

Pathologically, AD is characterized by the presence of distinctive lesions in the victim's brain. These brain lesions include abnormal intracellular filaments called neurofibrillary tangles (NTFs) and extracellular deposits of amyloidogenic proteins in senile, or amyloid, plaques. Amyloid deposits are also present in the walls of cerebral blood vessels of AD patients. The major protein constituent of amyloid plaques has been identified as a 4 kilodalton peptide called β -amyloid peptide (β -AP)(Glenner, G.G. and Wong, C.W. (1984) *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 120:885-890; Masters, C. *et al.* (1985) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82:4245-4249). Diffuse deposits of β -AP are frequently observed in normal adult brains, whereas AD brain tissue is characterized by

- 2 -

more compacted, dense-core β -amyloid plaques. (See *e.g.*, Davies, L. *et al.* (1988) *Neurology* 38:1688-1693) These observations suggest that β -AP deposition precedes, and contributes to, the destruction of neurons that occurs in AD. In further support of a direct pathogenic role for β -AP, β -amyloid has been shown to be toxic to mature 5 neurons, both in culture and *in vivo*. Yankner, B.A. *et al.* (1989) *Science* 245:417-420; Yankner, B.A. *et al.* (1990) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87:9020-9023; Roher, A.E. *et al.* (1991) *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 174:572-579; Kowall, N.W. *et al.* (1991) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:7247-7251. Furthermore, patients with hereditary cerebral hemorrhage with amyloidosis-Dutch-type (HCHWA-D), which is characterized by 10 diffuse β -amyloid deposits within the cerebral cortex and cerebrovasculature, have been shown to have a point mutation that leads to an amino acid substitution within β -AP. Levy, E. *et al.* (1990) *Science* 248:1124-1126. This observation demonstrates that a specific alteration of the β -AP sequence can cause β -amyloid to be deposited.

Natural β -AP is derived by proteolysis from a much larger protein called the 15 amyloid precursor protein (APP). Kang, J. *et al.* (1987) *Nature* 325:733; Goldgaber, D. *et al.* (1987) *Science* 235:877; Robakis, N.K. *et al.* (1987) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84:4190; Tanzi, R.E. *et al.* (1987) *Science* 235:880. The APP gene maps to chromosome 21, thereby providing an explanation for the β -amyloid deposition seen at an early age in individuals with Down's syndrome, which is caused by trisomy of 20 chromosome 21. Mann, D.M. *et al.* (1989) *Neuropathol. Appl. Neurobiol.* 15:317; Rumble, B. *et al.* (1989) *N. Eng. J. Med.* 320:1446. APP contains a single membrane spanning domain, with a long amino terminal region (about two-thirds of the protein) extending into the extracellular environment and a shorter carboxy-terminal region projecting into the cytoplasm. Differential splicing of the APP messenger RNA leads to 25 at least five forms of APP, composed of either 563 amino acids (APP-563), 695 amino acids (APP-695), 714 amino acids (APP-714), 751 amino acids (APP-751) or 770 amino acids (APP-770).

Within APP, naturally-occurring β amyloid peptide begins at an aspartic acid 30 residue at amino acid position 672 of APP-770. Naturally-occurring β -AP derived from proteolysis of APP is 39 to 43 amino acid residues in length, depending on the carboxy-

- 3 -

terminal end point, which exhibits heterogeneity. The predominant circulating form of β -AP in the blood and cerebrospinal fluid of both AD patients and normal adults is β 1-40 ("short β "). Seubert, P. *et al.* (1992) *Nature* **359**:325; Shoji, M. *et al.* (1992) *Science* **258**:126. However, β 1-42 and β 1-43 ("long β ") also are forms in β -amyloid plaques.

5 Masters, C. *et al.* (1985) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82:4245; Miller, D. *et al.* (1993) *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.* 301:41; Mori, H. *et al.* (1992) *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:17082.

10 Although the precise molecular mechanism leading to β -APP aggregation and deposition is unknown, the process has been likened to that of nucleation-dependent polymerizations, such as protein crystallization, microtubule formation and actin

15 polymerization. See *e.g.*, Jarrett, J.T. and Lansbury, P.T. (1993) *Cell* 73:1055-1058. In such processes, polymerization of monomer components does not occur until nucleus formation. Thus, these processes are characterized by a lag time before aggregation occurs, followed by rapid polymerization after nucleation. Nucleation can be accelerated by the addition of a "seed" or preformed nucleus, which results in rapid

20 polymerization. The long β forms of β -AP have been shown to act as seeds, thereby accelerating polymerization of both long and short β -AP forms. Jarrett, J.T. *et al.* (1993) *Biochemistry* 32:4693.

In one study, in which amino acid substitutions were made in β -AP, two mutant β peptides were reported to interfere with polymerization of non-mutated β -AP when the mutant and non-mutant forms of peptide were mixed. Hilbich, C. *et al.* (1992) *J. Mol. Biol.* 228:460-473. Equimolar amounts of the mutant and non-mutant (*i.e.*, natural) β amyloid peptides were used to see this effect and the mutant peptides were reported to be unsuitable for use *in vivo*. Hilbich, C. *et al.* (1992), *supra*.

25 Summary of the Invention

This invention pertains to compounds, and pharmaceutical compositions thereof, that can bind to natural β amyloid peptides (β -AP), modulate the aggregation of natural β -AP and/or inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural β -APs. The compounds are modified in a manner which allows for increased biostability and prolonged elevated plasma levels.

preferably based on β -amyloid peptide, that is composed entirely of D-amino acids. In various embodiments, the peptidic structure of the modulator compound comprises a D-amino acid sequence corresponding to a L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP, a D-amino acid sequence which is an inverso isomer of an L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP, a D-amino acid sequence which is a retro-inverso isomer of an L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP, or a D-amino acid sequence that is a scrambled or substituted version of an L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP. Preferably, the D-amino acid peptidic structure of the modulator is designed based upon a subregion of natural β -AP at positions 17-21 (A β ₁₇₋₂₀ and A β ₁₇₋₂₁, 5 respectively), which has the amino acid sequences Leu-Val-Phe-Phe-Ala (SEQ ID NO:4). In preferred embodiments, a phenylalanine in the compounds of the invention is substituted with a phenylalanine analogue which is more stable and less prone to, for example, oxidative metabolism, or allows for increased brain levels of the compound. 10

In yet another embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention includes a β -amyloid peptide comprised of D-amino acids, L-amino acids or both, an inverso isomer of a β -amyloid peptide, or a retro-inverso isomer of a β -amyloid peptide which is attached to a hydrazine moiety, wherein the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. 15

20 A modulator compound of the invention preferably comprises 3-20 D-amino acids, more preferably 3-10 D-amino acids and even more preferably 3-5 D-amino acids. The D-amino acid peptidic structure of the modulator can have free amino-, carboxy-, or carboxy amide- termini. Alternatively, the amino-terminus, the carboxy-terminus or both may be modified. For example, an N-terminal modifying group can be used that enhances the ability of the compound to inhibit A β aggregation. Moreover, the amino- 25 and/or carboxy termini of the peptide can be modified to alter a pharmacokinetic property of the compound (such as stability, bioavailability, e.g., enhanced delivery of the compound across the blood brain barrier and entry into the brain, and the like). Preferred amino-terminal modifying groups include alkyl groups, e.g., methyl, ethyl, or 30 isopropyl groups. Preferred carboxy-terminal modifying groups include amide groups,

- 5 -

alkyl or aryl amide groups (e.g., phenethylamide), hydroxy groups (i.e., reduction products of peptide acids, resulting in peptide alcohols), acyl amide groups, and acetyl groups. Still further, a modulator compound can be modified to label the compound with a detectable substance (e.g., a radioactive label).

5 In certain preferred embodiments, the invention provides a compound having the structure: N,N-dimethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-isopropyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-isopropylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-dimethylamide; N,N-diethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-diethyl-(D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-propyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Ile-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂; H-(D-Nle-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-NH₂; H-(D-Nle-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Nle)-NH₂; 1-piperidine-acetyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; 1-piperidine-acetyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu-isopropylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-methylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-methylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-OH; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂

- 6 -

Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu- D-Lys-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu- D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu- D-Lys- D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-5 D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH-COCH₃; and H- D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH₂.

Particularly preferred compounds of the invention are set forth in the Examples.

Another aspect of the invention pertains to pharmaceutical compositions.

10 Typically, the pharmaceutical composition comprises a therapeutically effective amount of a modulator compound of the invention and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

Yet another aspect of the invention pertains to methods for inhibiting aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptides. These methods comprise contacting the natural β -amyloid peptides with a modulator compound of the invention such that 15 aggregation of the natural β -amyloid peptides is inhibited.

Yet another aspect of the invention pertains to methods for detecting the presence or absence of natural β -amyloid peptides in a biological sample. These methods comprise contacting a biological sample with a compound of the invention, wherein the compound is labeled with a detectable substance, and detecting the 20 compound bound to natural β -amyloid peptides to thereby detect the presence or absence of natural β -amyloid peptides in the biological sample.

Still another aspect of the invention pertains to methods for treating a subject for a disorder associated with β -amyloidosis. These methods comprise administering to the subject a therapeutically effective amount of a modulator compound of the invention 25 such that the subject is treated for a disorder associated with β -amyloidosis. Preferably, the disorder is Alzheimer's disease. Use of the modulators of the invention for therapy or for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a disorder associated with β -amyloidosis is also encompassed by the invention.

Brief Description of the Drawings

Figure 1 is a table depicting the results from a brain uptake assay.

Figure 2 is a graph depicting the results from the fibril binding assay described in Example 2.

5

Detailed Description of the Invention

This invention pertains to compounds, and pharmaceutical compositions thereof, that can bind to natural β -amyloid peptides, modulate the aggregation of natural β amyloid peptides (β -AP) and/or inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural β -APs. The 10 compounds are modified in a manner which allows for increased biostability and prolonged elevated plasma levels. A compound of the invention that modulates aggregation of natural β -AP, referred to herein interchangeably as a β amyloid modulator compound, a β amyloid modulator or simply a modulator, alters the aggregation of natural β -AP when the modulator is contacted with natural β -AP. Thus, 15 a compound of the invention acts to alter the natural aggregation process or rate for β -AP, thereby disrupting this process. Preferably, the compounds inhibit β -AP aggregation. The compounds of the invention are characterized in that they comprise a peptidic structure composed entirely of D-amino acid residues. This peptidic structure is preferably based on β -amyloid peptide and can comprise, for example, a D-amino acid 20 sequence corresponding to a L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP, a D-amino acid sequence which is an inverso isomer of an L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP, a D-amino acid sequence which is a retro-inverso isomer of an L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP, or a D-amino acid sequence that is a scrambled or substituted version of an L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP. 25 In preferred embodiments, the phenylalanines in the compounds of the invention are substituted with phenylalanine analogues which are more stable and less prone to, for example, oxidative metabolism.

The invention encompasses modulator compounds comprising a D-amino acid peptidic structure having free amino-, carboxy-, or carboxy amide- termini, as well as

modulator compounds in which the amino-terminus, the carboxy-terminus, and/or side chain(s) of the peptidic structure are modified.

The β amyloid modulator compounds of the invention can be selected based upon their ability to bind to natural β -amyloid peptides, modulate the aggregation of natural β -AP *in vitro* and/or inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural β -AP fibrils for cultured cells (using assays described herein, for example, the neurotoxicity assay, the nucleation assay, or the fibril binding assay). Preferred modulator compounds inhibit the aggregation of natural β -AP and/or inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural β -AP. However, modulator compounds selected based on one or both of these properties may have additional properties *in vivo* that may be beneficial in the treatment of amyloidosis (J. S. Pachter *et al.* (1998) "A β 1-40 induced neurocytopathic activation of human monocytes is blocked by A β peptide aggregation inhibitors." *Neurobiology of Aging* (Abstracts: The 6th International Conference on Alzheimer's Disease and Related Disorders, Amsterdam, 18-23 July 1998) 19, S128 (Abstract 540); R. Weltzen, A. *et al.* (1998) 15 "Phagocytosis of Beta-Amyloid: A Possible Requisite for Neurotoxicity." *J. Neuroimmunology* (Special Issue: Abstracts of the International Society of Neuroimmunology Fifth International Congress, Montreal, Canada, 23-27 August 1998) 1998, 90, 32 (Abstract 162)). For example, the modulator compound may interfere with processing of natural β -AP (either by direct or indirect protease inhibition) or by 20 modulation of processes that produce toxic β -AP, or other APP fragments, *in vivo*. Alternatively, modulator compounds may be selected based on these latter properties, rather than inhibition of A β aggregation *in vitro*. Moreover, modulator compounds of the invention that are selected based upon their interaction with natural β -AP also may interact with APP or with other APP fragments. Still further, a modulator compound of 25 the invention can be characterized by its ability to bind to β -amyloid fibrils (which can be determined, for example, by radiolabeling the compound, contacting the compound with β -amyloid plaque and counting or detecting, e.g., by imaging, the compound bound to pathological forms of β -AP, e.g., the plaque), while not significantly altering the aggregation of the β -amyloid fibrils. Such a compound that binds efficiently to β - 30 amyloid fibrils while not significantly altering the aggregation of the β -amyloid fibrils

can be used, for example, to detect β -amyloid fibrils (e.g., for diagnostic purposes, as described further herein). It should be appreciated, however, that the ability of a particular compound to bind to β -amyloid fibrils and/or modulate their aggregation may vary depending upon the concentration of the compound. Accordingly, a compound 5 that, at a low concentration, binds to β -amyloid fibrils without altering their aggregation may nevertheless inhibit aggregation of the fibrils at a higher concentration. All such compounds having the property of binding to β -amyloid fibrils and/or modulating the aggregation of the fibrils are intended to be encompassed by the invention.

As used herein, a "modulator" of β -amyloid aggregation is intended to refer to an 10 agent that, when contacted with natural β amyloid peptides, alters the aggregation of the natural β amyloid peptides. The term "aggregation of β amyloid peptides" refers to a process whereby the peptides associate with each other to form a multimeric, largely insoluble complex. The term "aggregation" further is intended to encompass β amyloid fibril formation and also encompasses β -amyloid plaques.

15 The terms "natural β -amyloid peptide", "natural β -AP" and "natural A β peptide", used interchangeably herein, are intended to encompass naturally occurring proteolytic cleavage products of the β amyloid precursor protein (APP) which are involved in β -AP aggregation and β -amyloidosis. These natural peptides include β -amyloid peptides having 39-43 amino acids (i.e., A β ₁₋₃₉, A β ₁₋₄₀, A β ₁₋₄₁, A β ₁₋₄₂ and A β ₁₋₄₃). The 20 amino-terminal amino acid residue of natural β -AP corresponds to the aspartic acid residue at position 672 of the 770 amino acid residue form of the amyloid precursor protein ("APP-770"). The 43 amino acid long form of natural β -AP has the amino acid sequence DAEFRHDSGYEVHHQKLVFFAEDVGSNKGAIIGLMVGGVVIAT (also shown in SEQ ID NO:1), whereas the shorter forms have 1-4 amino acid residues 25 deleted from the carboxy-terminal end. The amino acid sequence of APP-770 from position 672 (i.e., the amino-terminus of natural β -AP) to its C-terminal end (103 amino acids) is shown in SEQ ID NO:2. The preferred form of natural β -AP for use in the aggregation assays described herein is A β ₁₋₄₀ or A β ₁₋₄₂.

In the presence of a modulator of the invention, aggregation of natural β amyloid peptides is "altered" or "modulated". The various forms of the term "alteration" or "modulation" are intended to encompass both inhibition of β -AP aggregation and promotion of β -AP aggregation. Aggregation of natural β -AP is "inhibited" in the presence of the modulator when there is a decrease in the amount and/or rate of β -AP aggregation as compared to the amount and/or rate of β -AP aggregation in the absence of the modulator. The various forms of the term "inhibition" are intended to include both complete and partial inhibition of β -AP aggregation. Inhibition of aggregation can be quantitated as the fold increase in the lag time for aggregation or as the decrease in the overall plateau level of aggregation (*i.e.*, total amount of aggregation), using an aggregation assay as described in the Examples. In various embodiments, a modulator of the invention increases the lag time of aggregation at least 1.2-fold, 1.5-fold, 1.8-fold, 2-fold, 2.5-fold, 3-fold, 4-fold or 5-fold, for example, when the compound is at a one molar equivalent to the β -AP. In various other embodiments, a modulator of the invention inhibits the plateau level of aggregation at least 10%, 20%, 30%, 40 %, 50 %, 75 % or 100 %.

A modulator which inhibits β -AP aggregation (an "inhibitory modulator compound") can be used to prevent or delay the onset of β -amyloid deposition. Preferably, inhibitory modulator compounds of the invention inhibit the formation and/or activity of neurotoxic aggregates of natural A β peptide (*i.e.*, the inhibitory compounds can be used to inhibit the neurotoxicity of β -AP). Additionally, the inhibitory compounds of the invention can reduce the neurotoxicity of preformed β -AP aggregates, indicating that the inhibitory modulators can either bind to preformed A β fibrils or soluble aggregate and modulate their inherent neurotoxicity or that the modulators can perturb the equilibrium between monomeric and aggregated forms of β -AP in favor of the non-neurotoxic form.

Alternatively, in another embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention promotes the aggregation of natural A β peptides. The various forms of the term "promotion" refer to an increase in the amount and/or rate of β -AP aggregation in the

presence of the modulator, as compared to the amount and/or rate of β -AP aggregation in the absence of the modulator. Such a compound which promotes $A\beta$ aggregation is referred to as a stimulatory modulator compound. Stimulatory modulator compounds may be useful for sequestering β -amyloid peptides, for example in a biological compartment where aggregation of β -AP may not be deleterious to thereby deplete β -AP from a biological compartment where aggregation of β -AP is deleterious. Moreover, stimulatory modulator compounds can be used to promote $A\beta$ aggregation in *in vitro* aggregation assays (e.g., assays such as those described in Example 2), for example in screening assays for test compounds that can then inhibit or reverse this $A\beta$ aggregation (i.e., a stimulatory modulator compound can act as a "seed" to promote the formation of $A\beta$ aggregates).

In a preferred embodiment, the modulators of the invention are capable of altering β -AP aggregation when contacted with a molar excess amount of natural β -AP. A "molar excess amount of natural β -AP" refers to a concentration of natural β -AP, in moles, that is greater than the concentration, in moles, of the modulator. For example, if the modulator and β -AP are both present at a concentration of 1 μ M, they are said to be "equimolar", whereas if the modulator is present at a concentration of 1 μ M and the β -AP is present at a concentration of 5 μ M, the β -AP is said to be present at a 5-fold molar excess amount compared to the modulator. In preferred embodiments, a modulator of the invention is effective at altering natural β -AP aggregation when the natural β -AP is present at at least a 2-fold, 3-fold or 5-fold molar excess compared to the concentration of the modulator. In other embodiments, the modulator is effective at altering β -AP aggregation when the natural β -AP is present at at least a 10-fold, 20-fold, 33-fold, 50-fold, 100-fold, 500-fold or 1000-fold molar excess compared to the concentration of the modulator.

As used herein, the term " β amyloid peptide comprised entirely of D-amino acids", as used in a modulator of the invention, is intended to encompass peptides having an amino acid sequence identical to that of the natural sequence in APP, as well as peptides having acceptable amino acid substitutions from the natural sequence, but

- 12 -

which is composed of D-amino acids rather than the natural L-amino acids present in natural β -AP. Acceptable amino acid substitutions are those that do not affect and/or may improve the ability of the D-amino acid-containing peptide to alter natural β -AP aggregation. Moreover, particular amino acid substitutions may further contribute to the 5 ability of the peptide to alter natural β -AP aggregation and/or may confer additional beneficial properties on the peptide (e.g., increased solubility, reduced association with other amyloid proteins, etc.). A peptide having an identical amino acid sequence to that found within a parent peptide but in which all L-amino acids have been substituted with all D-amino acids is also referred to as an "inverso" compounds. For example, if a 10 parent peptide is Thr-Ala-Tyr, the inverso form is D-Thr-D-Ala-D-Tyr.

As used herein, the term "retro-inverso isomer of a β amyloid peptide", as used in a modulator of the invention, is intended to encompass peptides in which the sequence of the amino acids is reversed as compared to the sequence in natural β -AP and all L-amino acids are replaced with D-amino acids. For example, if a parent peptide 15 is Thr-Ala-Tyr, the retro-inverso form is D-Tyr-D-Ala-D-Thr. Compared to the parent peptide, a retro-inverso peptide has a reversed backbone while retaining substantially the original spatial conformation of the side chains, resulting in a retro-inverso isomer with a topology that closely resembles the parent peptide. See Goodman *et al.* "Perspectives in Peptide Chemistry" pp. 283-294 (1981). See also U.S. Patent No. 4,522,752 by Sisto 20 for further description of "retro-inverso" peptides.

Various additional aspects of the modulators of the invention, and the uses thereof, are described in further detail in the following subsections.

I. Modulator Compounds

25 In one embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention comprises a β -amyloid peptide, the β -amyloid peptide being comprised entirely of D-amino acids, wherein the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. Preferably, the β -amyloid peptide of the modulator is 30 comprised of 3-20 D-amino acids, more preferably 3-10 D-amino acids, and even more

preferably 3-5 D-amino acids. In preferred embodiments, a phenylalanine in the compounds of the invention is substituted with a phenylalanine analogue which is more stable and less prone to, for example, oxidative metabolism.

In one embodiment, the β -amyloid peptide of the modulator is amino-terminally modified, for example, with a modifying group comprising an alkyl group such as a C1-C6 lower alkyl group, *e.g.*, a methyl, ethyl, or propyl group; or a cyclic, heterocyclic, polycyclic or branched alkyl group. Examples of suitable N-terminal modifying groups are described further in subsection II below. In another embodiment, the β -amyloid peptide of the modulator is carboxy-terminally modified, for example the modulator can comprise a peptide amide, a peptide alkyl or aryl amide (*e.g.*, a peptide phenethylamide) or a peptide alcohol. Examples of suitable C-terminal modifying groups are described further in subsections II and III below. The β -amyloid peptide of the modulator may be modified to enhance the ability of the modulator to alter β -AP aggregation or neurotoxicity. Additionally or alternatively, β -amyloid peptide of the modulator may be modified to alter a pharmacokinetic property of the modulator and/or to label the modulator with a detectable substance (described further in subsection III below).

In another embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention comprises a retro-inverso isomer of a β -amyloid peptide, wherein the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. Preferably, the retro-inverso isomer of the β -amyloid peptide is comprised of 3-20 D-amino acids, more preferably 3-10 D-amino acids, and even more preferably 3-5 D-amino acids. In preferred embodiments, the phenylalanines in the compounds of the invention are substituted with phenylalanine analogues which are more stable and less prone to, for example, oxidative metabolism.

In one embodiment, the retro-inverso isomer is amino-terminally modified, for example, with a modifying group comprising an alkyl group such as a C1-C6 lower alkyl group, *e.g.*, a methyl, ethyl, or propyl group; or a cyclic, heterocyclic, polycyclic or branched alkyl group. Examples of suitable N-terminal modifying groups are described further in subsection II below. In another embodiment, the retro-inverso isomer is

carboxy-terminally modified, for example with an amide group, an alkyl or aryl amide group (*e.g.*, phenethylamide) or a hydroxy group (*i.e.*, the reduction product of a peptide acid, resulting in a peptide alcohol). Examples of suitable C-terminal modifying groups are described further in subsections II and III below. The retro-inverso isomer may be

5 modified to enhance the ability of the modulator to alter β -AP aggregation or neurotoxicity. Additionally or alternatively, the retro-inverso isomer may be modified to alter a pharmacokinetic property of the modulator and/or to label the modulator with a detectable substance (described further in subsection III below).

In yet another embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention includes a β -amyloid peptide comprised entirely or partially of D-amino acids, an inverso isomer of a β -amyloid peptide, or a retro-inverso isomer of a β -amyloid peptide which is attached to a hydrazine moiety, wherein the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. Preferably, the modulator

10 compound of the invention is comprised of 1-20 D-amino acids, more preferably 1-10 D-amino acids, even more preferably 1-5 D-amino acids, and most preferably 2-4 D-amino acids which are attached to a hydrazine moiety.

15

In one embodiment, the modulator compounds of the invention which include a hydrazine moiety are amino-terminally modified, for example with a modifying

20 comprising an alkyl group, *e.g.*, a methyl, ethyl, or isopropyl group. Examples of suitable N-terminal modifying groups are described further in subsection II below. In another embodiment, modulator compounds of the invention which include a hydrazine moiety are carboxy-terminally modified, for example with an acetyl. Examples of suitable C-terminal modifying groups are described further in subsections II and III

25 below. The modulator compounds of the invention which include a hydrazine moiety may be modified to enhance the ability of the modulator to alter β -AP aggregation or neurotoxicity. Additionally or alternatively, the modulator compounds of the invention which include a hydrazine moiety may be modified to alter a pharmacokinetic property of the modulator and/or to label the modulator with a detectable substance (described

30 further in subsection III below).

The modulators of the invention preferably are designed based upon the amino acid sequence of a subregion of natural β -AP. The term "subregion of a natural β -amyloid peptide" is intended to include amino-terminal and/or carboxy-terminal 5 deletions of natural β -AP. The term "subregion of natural β -AP" is not intended to include full-length natural β -AP (*i.e.*, "subregion" does not include $\text{A}\beta_{1-39}$, $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$, $\text{A}\beta_{1-41}$, $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ and $\text{A}\beta_{1-43}$). A preferred subregion of natural β -amyloid peptide is an "A β aggregation core domain" (ACD). As used herein, the term "A β aggregation core domain" refers to a subregion of a natural β -amyloid peptide that is sufficient to 10 modulate aggregation of natural β -APs when this subregion, in its L-amino acid form, is appropriately modified (*e.g.*, modified at the amino-terminus), as described in detail in U.S. patent application Serial No. 08/548,998 and U.S. patent application Serial No. 08/616,081, the entire contents of each of which are expressly incorporated herein by reference. Preferably, the ACD is modeled after a subregion of natural β -AP that is less 15 than 15 amino acids in length and more preferably is between 3-10 amino acids in length. In various embodiments, the ACD is modeled after a subregion of β -AP that is 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4 or 3 amino acids in length. In one embodiment, the subregion of β -AP upon which the ACD is modeled is an internal or carboxy-terminal region of β -AP (*i.e.*, downstream of the amino-terminus at amino acid position 1). In another 20 embodiment, the ACD is modeled after a subregion of β -AP that is hydrophobic. Preferred A β aggregation core domains encompass amino acid residues 17-20 or 17-21 of natural β -AP ($\text{A}\beta_{17-20}$ and $\text{A}\beta_{17-21}$, respectively) and analogues thereof, as described herein. The amino acid sequences of $\text{A}\beta_{17-20}$ and $\text{A}\beta_{17-21}$ are Leu-Val-Phe-Phe (SEQ ID NO:3) and Leu-Val-Phe-Phe-Ala (SEQ ID NO:4), respectively.

25 As demonstrated in the Examples, D-amino acid-containing modulators designed based upon the amino acid sequences of $\text{A}\beta_{17-20}$ and $\text{A}\beta_{17-21}$ are particularly effective inhibitors of A β aggregation and exhibit an enhanced biostability and prolonged elevated plasma levels. These modulators can comprise a D-amino acid sequence corresponding to the L-amino acid sequence of $\text{A}\beta_{17-20}$ or $\text{A}\beta_{17-21}$, a D-amino acid

sequence which is an inverso isomer of the L-amino acid sequence of A β ₁₇₋₂₀ or A β ₁₇₋₂₁, a D-amino acid sequence which is a retro-inverso isomer of the L-amino acid sequence of A β ₁₇₋₂₀ or A β ₁₇₋₂₁, or a D-amino acid sequence that is a scrambled or substituted version of the L-amino acid sequence of A β ₁₇₋₂₀ or A β ₁₇₋₂₁. In preferred 5 embodiments, a phenylalanine in the modulators designed based upon the amino acid sequences of A β ₁₇₋₂₀ and A β ₁₇₋₂₁ is substituted with a phenylalanine analogue which is more stable and less prone to, for example, oxidative metabolism. In other preferred embodiments, the modulators designed based upon the amino acid sequences of A β ₁₇₋₂₀ and A β ₁₇₋₂₁ further comprise a hydrazine moiety.

10 The D-amino acid-based modulators may have unmodified amino- and/or carboxy-termini and/or carboxy amide termini, or, alternatively, the amino-terminus, the carboxy-terminus, or both, may be modified (described further below). The peptidic structures of effective modulators generally are hydrophobic and are characterized by the presence of at least two D-amino acid structures independently selected from the group

15 consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure and a D-valine structure. As used herein, the term a "D-amino acid structure" (such as a "D-leucine structure", a "D-phenylalanine structure" or a "D-valine structure") is intended to include the D-amino acid, as well as analogues, derivatives and mimetics of the D-amino acid that maintain the functional activity of the compound (discussed further below). For

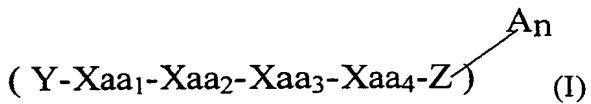
20 example, the term "D-phenylalanine structure" is intended to include D-phenylalanine as well as D-cyclohexylalanine [D-cha], D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine) {[p-F]f or D-[p-F]Phe}, D-pentafluorophenylalanine {[F₅]f or D-[F₅]Phe}, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, D-homophenylalanine, methyltyrosine, and benzylserine, as well as

25 substitution with D-lysine structure, D-valine structure, or a D-leucine structure. The term "D-leucine structure" is intended to include D-leucine, as well as substitution with D-valine, D-isoleucine, or other natural or non-natural amino acids having an aliphatic side chain, such as D-norleucine, or D-norvaline. The term "D-valine structure" is intended to include D-valine, as well as substitution with D-leucine or other natural or

30 non-natural amino acid having an aliphatic side chain.

In other embodiments, the peptidic structure of the modulator comprises at least two D-amino acid structures independently selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure, a D-valine structure, a D-alanine structure, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, and a D-lysine structure. In 5 another embodiment, the peptidic structure is comprised of at least three D-amino acid structures independently selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure and a D-valine structure. In yet another embodiment, the peptidic structure is comprised of at least three D-amino acid structures independently selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure, 10 a D-valine structure, a D-alanine structure, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, and a D-lysine structure. In yet another embodiment, the peptidic structure comprises at least four D-amino acid structures independently selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure and a D-valine structure. In yet another embodiment, the peptidic structure is comprised of at least four D-amino 15 acid structures independently selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure and a D-valine structure. In preferred embodiments, the peptidic structure includes at least one phenylalanine analogue which is more stable than phenylalanine and less prone to, for example, oxidative metabolism.

In one embodiment, the invention provides a β -amyloid modulator compound 20 comprising a formula (I):



25 wherein Xaa_1 , Xaa_2 , Xaa_3 and Xaa_4 are each D-amino acid structures and at least two of Xaa_1 , Xaa_2 , Xaa_3 and Xaa_4 are, independently, selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine),

- 18 -

D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, and a D-valine structure;

Y, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_a, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and a is an integer from 1 to 15;

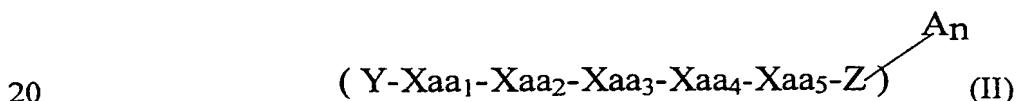
5 Z, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_b, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and b is an integer from 1 to 15;

A, which may or may not be present, is a modifying group attached directly or indirectly to the compound; and

n is an integer from 1 to 15;

10 wherein Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃, Xaa₄, Y, Z, A and n are selected such that the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides, and is less prone to metabolism, e.g., oxidative metabolism.

15 In a subembodiment of this formula, a fifth amino acid residue, Xaa₅, is specified C-terminal to Xaa₄ and Z, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_b, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and b is an integer from 1 to 14. Accordingly, the invention provides a β -amyloid modulator compound comprising a formula (II):



wherein b is an integer from 1 to 14.

In a preferred embodiment, Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃, Xaa₄ of formula (I) are selected based on the sequence of A β ₁₇₋₂₀, or acceptable substitutions thereof. Accordingly, in 25 preferred embodiments, Xaa₁ is a D-alanine structure or a D-leucine structure, Xaa₂ is a D-valine structure or a D-phenylalanine structure, Xaa₃ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine

- 19 -

structure, or a D-lysine structure and Xaa₄ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure.

In another preferred embodiment, Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃, Xaa₄ and Xaa₅ of formula (II) are selected based on the sequence of A β ₁₇₋₂₁, or acceptable substitutions thereof. Accordingly, in preferred embodiments, Xaa₁ is a D-alanine structure or a D-leucine structure, Xaa₂ is a D-valine structure, Xaa₃ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure, Xaa₄ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure, and Xaa₅ is a D-alanine structure or a D-leucine structure.

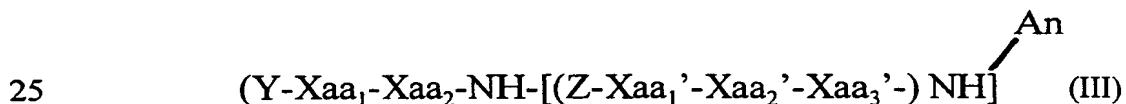
In another preferred embodiment, Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃ and Xaa₄ of formula (I) are selected based on the retro-inverso isomer of A β ₁₇₋₂₀, or acceptable substitutions thereof. Accordingly, in preferred embodiments, Xaa₁ is a D-alanine structure, a D-leucine structure, or a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, a D-leucine structure, a D-valine structure, or a D-lysine structure; Xaa₂ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure; Xaa₃ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine

- 20 -

(para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure; and Xaa₄ is a D-valine structure or a D-leucine structure.

5 In another preferred embodiment, Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃, Xaa₄ and Xaa₅ of formula (II) are selected based on the retroinverso isomer of A β ₁₇₋₂₁, or acceptable substitutions thereof. Accordingly, in preferred embodiments, Xaa₁ is a D-alanine structure, a D-leucine structure or a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, 10 chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure; Xaa₂ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D- 15 homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure; Xaa₃ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine 20 structure; Xaa₄ is a D-valine structure or a D-leucine structure and Xaa₅ is a D-leucine structure.

In another embodiment, the invention provides a β -amyloid modulator compound comprising a formula (III):



wherein Xaa₁ and Xaa₂ are each D-amino acid structures and at least two of Xaa₁ and Xaa₂ are, independently, selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, 30 D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine,

chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, a D-lysine structure, or a D-valine structure;

NH-NH is a hydrazine structure;

5 Y, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_a, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and a is an integer from 1 to 15; Xaa₁', Xaa₂', and Xaa₃' which may or may not be present, are each D-amino acid or L-amino acid structures and at least two of Xaa₁', Xaa₂', and Xaa₃' are, independently, selected from the group consisting of a D- or L-leucine structure, a D- or 10 L-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D- or L-tyrosine structure, a D- or L-iodotyrosine structure, a D- or L-lysine structure, or a D- or L-valine structure;

15 Z, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_b, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and b is an integer from 1 to 15;

A, which may or may not be present, is a modifying group attached directly or indirectly to the compound; and

n is an integer from 1 to 15;

20 wherein Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₁', Xaa₂', Xaa₃', Y, Z, A and n are selected such that the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides, and is less prone to metabolism, e.g., oxidative metabolism.

In the modulators of the invention having the formula (I), (II), or (III) shown above, an optional modifying group ("A") is attached directly or indirectly to the peptidic structure of the modulator. (As used herein, the term "modulating group" and "modifying group" are used interchangeably to describe a chemical group directly or indirectly attached to a peptidic structure). For example, a modifying group(s) can be directly attached by covalent coupling to the peptidic structure or a modifying group(s) 25 can be attached indirectly by a stable non-covalent association. In one embodiment of

the invention, a modifying group is attached to the amino-terminus of the modulator. Alternatively, in another embodiment of the invention, a modifying group is attached to the carboxy-terminus of the modulator. In other embodiments, the modifying group is attached to both the amino and the carboxy-terminus of the modulator. In yet another 5 embodiment, a modulating group(s) is attached to the side chain of at least one amino acid residues of the peptidic structure of the modulator (e.g., through the epsilon amino group of a lysyl residue(s), through the carboxyl group of an aspartic acid residue(s) or a glutamic acid residue(s), through a hydroxy group of a tyrosyl residue(s), a serine residue(s) or a threonine residue(s) or other suitable reactive group on an amino acid side 10 chain).

If a modifying group(s) is present, the modifying group is selected such that the compound inhibits aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. Accordingly, since the β -AP peptide of the compound is modified from its natural state, the modifying group "A" as used herein is not intended 15 to include hydrogen. In a modulator of the invention, a single modifying group may be attached to the peptidic structure or multiple modifying groups may be attached to the peptidic structure. The number of modifying groups is selected such that the compound inhibits aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. However, n preferably is an integer between 1 and 60, more 20 preferably between 1 and 30 and even more preferably between 1 and 10 or 1 and 5. In a preferred embodiment, A is an amino-terminal modifying group comprising a cyclic, heterocyclic, polycyclic, linear, or branched alkyl group and n=1. In another preferred embodiment, A is carboxy-terminally modifying group comprising an amide group, an alkyl amide group, an aryl amide group or a hydroxy group, and n=1. Suitable 25 modifying groups are described further in subsections II and III below.

In preferred specific embodiments, the invention provides a β -amyloid modulator compound comprising a peptidic structure selected from the group consisting of (D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:5); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-Cha-D-Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:6); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:7); (D- 30 Leu-D-Val-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:8); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F-

- 23 -

_s]Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:9); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-[F_s]Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:10); (D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:11); (D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:12); D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[F_s]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:13); (D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:14); (D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:15); (D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:16); (D-Leu-D-[F_s]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:17); (D-Leu-D-Lys-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:18); (D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:19); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-Cha-D-Cha-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:20); (D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:21); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-[p-F]Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:22); (D-Leu-D-[F_s]Phe-D-[F_s]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:23); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-[F_s]Phe-D-[F_s]Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:24); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe) (SEQ ID NO:25).

Any of the aforementioned specific peptidic structures can be amino-terminally and/or carboxy-terminally modified and described further in subsections II and/or III 15 below.

Particularly preferred modulators of the invention include the following:

N,N-dimethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-isopropyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-isopropylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-dimethylamide; N,N-diethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-diethyl-(D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-propyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-diethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Ile-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂; H-(D-Nle-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-NH₂; H-(D-Nle-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂.

Phe-D-Phe-D-Nle)-NH₂; 1-piperidine-acetyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; 1-piperidine-acetyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu-isopropylamide; H-D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu-isopropylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-methylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-
5 D-Leu)-methylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-OH; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-
10 Phe-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-
15 Phe-D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-
NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Lys-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Cha-D-
Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Lys-D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂;
15 N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-(H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe)-NH; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH-COCH₃; and H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH₂.

Even more preferred compounds of the invention include PPI-1319: H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-[p-F]D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂ and PPI:1019: N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂. (As described above, D-Cha stands for D-cyclohexylalanine; [p-F]f or D-[p-F]Phe stands for D-4-fluorophenylalanine (also *para*-fluorophenylalanine); [F₅]f or D-[F₅]Phe stands for D-pentafluorophenylalanine; and D-Nle stands for D-norleucine).

25 The D-amino acid peptidic structures of the modulators of the invention are further intended to include other peptide modifications, including analogues, derivatives and mimetics, that retain the ability of the modulator to alter natural β -AP aggregation as described herein. For example, a D-amino acid peptidic structure of a modulator of the invention may be further modified to increase its stability, bioavailability, and
30 solubility. The terms "analogue", "derivative" and "mimetic" as used herein are intended to include molecules which mimic the chemical structure of a D-peptidic

structure and retain the functional properties of the D-peptidic structure. Approaches to designing peptide analogs, derivatives and mimetics are known in the art. For example, see Farmer, P.S. in Drug Design (E.J. Ariens, ed.) Academic Press, New York, 1980, vol. 10, pp. 119-143; Ball, J.B. and Alewood, P.F. (1990) *J. Mol. Recognition* 3:55;

5 Morgan, B.A. and Gainor, J.A. (1989) *Ann. Rep. Med. Chem.* 24:243; and Freidinger, R.M. (1989) *Trends Pharmacol. Sci.* 10:270. See also Sawyer, T.K. (1995) "Peptidomimetic Design and Chemical Approaches to Peptide Metabolism" in Taylor, M.D. and Amidon, G.L. (eds.) *Peptide-Based Drug Design: Controlling Transport and Metabolism*, Chapter 17; Smith, A.B. 3rd, *et al.* (1995) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 117:11113-

10 11123; Smith, A.B. 3rd, *et al.* (1994) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 116:9947-9962; and Hirschman, R., *et al.* (1993) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 115:12550-12568.

As used herein, a "derivative" of a compound X (e.g., a peptide or amino acid) refers to a form of X in which one or more reaction groups on the compound have been derivatized with a substituent group. Examples of peptide derivatives include peptides 15 in which an amino acid side chain, the peptide backbone, or the amino- or carboxy- terminus has been derivatized (e.g., peptidic compounds with methylated amide linkages). As used herein an "analogue" of a compound X refers to a compound which retains chemical structures of X necessary for functional activity of X yet which also contains certain chemical structures which differ from X. An examples of an analogue 20 of a naturally-occurring peptide is a peptide which includes one or more non-naturally- occurring amino acids. As used herein, a "mimetic" of a compound X refers to a compound in which chemical structures of X necessary for functional activity of X have been replaced with other chemical structures which mimic the conformation of X. Examples of peptidomimetics include peptidic compounds in which the peptide 25 backbone is substituted with one or more benzodiazepine molecules (see e.g., James, G.L. *et al.* (1993) *Science* 260:1937-1942).

Analogues of the modulator compounds of the invention are intended to include compounds in which one or more D-amino acids of the peptidic structure are substituted with a homologous amino acid such that the properties of the original modulator are 30 maintained. Preferably conservative amino acid substitutions are made at one or more amino acid residues. A "conservative amino acid substitution" is one in which the

amino acid residue is replaced with an amino acid residue having a similar side chain. Families of amino acid residues having similar side chains have been defined in the art, including basic side chains (e.g., lysine, arginine, histidine), acidic side chains (e.g., aspartic acid, glutamic acid), uncharged polar side chains (e.g., glycine, asparagine, 5 glutamine, serine, threonine, tyrosine, cysteine), nonpolar side chains (e.g., alanine, valine, leucine, isoleucine, proline, phenylalanine, methionine, tryptophan), β -branched side chains (e.g., threonine, valine, isoleucine) and aromatic side chains (e.g., tyrosine, phenylalanine, tryptophan, histidine). Non-limiting examples of homologous substitutions that can be made in the peptidic structures of the modulators of the 10 invention include substitution of D-phenylalanine with D-tyrosine, D-pyridylalanine or D-homophenylalanine, substitution of D-leucine with D-valine or other natural or non-natural amino acid having an aliphatic side chain and/or substitution of D-valine with D-leucine or other natural or non-natural amino acid having an aliphatic side chain.

The term mimetic, and in particular, peptidomimetic, is intended to include 15 isosteres. The term "isostere" as used herein is intended to include a chemical structure that can be substituted for a second chemical structure because the steric conformation of the first structure fits a binding site specific for the second structure. The term specifically includes peptide back-bone modifications (i.e., amide bond mimetics) well known to those skilled in the art. Such modifications include modifications of the amide 20 nitrogen, the α -carbon, amide carbonyl, complete replacement of the amide bond, extensions, deletions or backbone crosslinks. Several peptide backbone modifications are known, including ψ [CH₂S], ψ [CH₂NH], ψ [CSNH₂], ψ [NHCO], ψ [COCH₂], and ψ [(E) or (Z) CH=CH]. In the nomenclature used above, ψ indicates the absence of an 25 amide bond. The structure that replaces the amide group is specified within the brackets.

Other possible modifications include an N-alkyl (or aryl) substitution (ψ [CONR]), or backbone crosslinking to construct lactams and other cyclic structures. Other derivatives of the modulator compounds of the invention include C-terminal hydroxymethyl derivatives, *O*-modified derivatives (e.g., C-terminal hydroxymethyl 30 benzyl ether), N-terminally modified derivatives including substituted amides such as

alkylamides and hydrazides and compounds in which a C-terminal phenylalanine residue is replaced with a phenethylamide analogue (e.g., Val-Phe-phenethylamide as an analogue of the tripeptide Val-Phe-Phe).

The modulator compounds of the invention can be incorporated into 5 pharmaceutical compositions (described further in subsection V below) and can be used in detection and treatment methods as described further in subsection VI below.

II. Modifying Groups

In certain embodiments, the modulator compounds of the invention are coupled 10 directly or indirectly to at least one modifying group (abbreviated as MG). The term "modifying group" is intended to include structures that are directly attached to the D-amino acid peptidic structure (e.g., by covalent coupling), as well as those that are indirectly attached to the peptidic structure (e.g., by a stable non-covalent association or by covalent coupling to additional amino acid residues, or mimetics, analogues or 15 derivatives thereof, which may flank the A β -derived D-amino acid peptidic structure). For example, the modifying group can be coupled to the amino-terminus or carboxy-terminus of an A β -derived D-amino acid peptidic structure, or to a peptidic or peptidomimetic region flanking the core domain. Alternatively, the modifying group can be coupled to a side chain of at least one D-amino acid residue of an A β -derived D- 20 amino acid peptidic structure, or to a peptidic or peptidomimetic region flanking the core domain (e.g., through the epsilon amino group of a lysyl residue(s), through the carboxyl group of an aspartic acid residue(s) or a glutamic acid residue(s), through a hydroxy group of a tyrosyl residue(s), a serine residue(s) or a threonine residue(s) or other suitable reactive group on an amino acid side chain). Modifying groups covalently 25 coupled to the D-amino acid peptidic structure can be attached by means and using methods well known in the art for linking chemical structures, including, for example, amide, alkylamino, carbamate, urea or ester bonds.

The term "modifying group" is intended to include groups that are not naturally coupled to natural A β peptides in their native form. Accordingly, the term "modifying 30 group" is not intended to include hydrogen. The modifying group(s) is selected such

that the modulator compound alters, and preferably inhibits, aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. Although not intending to be limited by mechanism, in embodiments where 5 the modulator comprises a modifying group(s), the modifying group(s) is thought to function as a key pharmacophore that enhances the ability of the modulator to disrupt A β polymerization.

In a preferred embodiment, the modifying group(s) comprises an alkyl group. The term "alkyl", as used herein, refers to a straight or branched chain hydrocarbon 10 group having from about 1 to about 10 carbon atoms. Exemplary alkyl groups include methyl, ethyl, dimethyl, diethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, n-pentyl, and n-hexyl. An alkyl group may be unsubstituted, or may be substituted at one or more positions, with, e.g., halogens, alkyls, cycloalkyls, alkenyls, alkynyls, aryls, heterocycles, hydroxyls, aminos, nitros, thiols, amines, imines, amides, 15 phosphonates, phosphines, carbonyls, carboxyls, silyls, ethers, thioethers, sulfonyls, selenoethers, ketones, aldehydes, esters, -CF₃, -CN, or the like. Preferred alkyls are methyls, ethyls, dimethyls, diethyls, n-propyls, isopropyls.

In another embodiment, one modifying group, e.g., an alkyl group, is coupled to another modifying group. In yet another embodiment, a D-amino acid in a modulator 20 compound of the invention is modified with two modifying groups. Accordingly, preferred modifying groups include a 1-piperidine acetyl group.

In a preferred embodiment, the modifying group(s) comprises a cyclic, heterocyclic, polycyclic or branched alkyl group. The term "cyclic group", as used herein, is intended to include cyclic saturated or unsaturated (*i.e.*, aromatic) group 25 having from about 3 to 10, preferably about 4 to 8, and more preferably about 5 to 7, carbon atoms. Exemplary cyclic groups include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, and cyclooctyl. Cyclic groups may be unsubstituted or substituted at one or more ring positions. Thus, a cyclic group may be substituted with, e.g., halogens, alkyls, cycloalkyls, alkenyls, alkynyls, aryls, heterocycles, hydroxyls, aminos, nitros, 30 thiols amines, imines, amides, phosphonates, phosphines, carbonyls, carboxyls, silyls,

ethers, thioethers, sulfonyls, sulfonates, selenoethers, ketones, aldehydes, esters, -CF₃, -CN, or the like.

The term "heterocyclic group" is intended to include cyclic saturated or unsaturated (*i.e.*, aromatic) group having from about 3 to 10, preferably about 4 to 8, and 5 more preferably about 5 to 7, carbon atoms, wherein the ring structure includes about one to four heteroatoms. Heterocyclic groups include pyrrolidine, oxolane, thiolane, imidazole, oxazole, piperidine, piperazine, morpholine and pyridine. The heterocyclic ring can be substituted at one or more positions with such substituents as, for example, 10 halogens, alkyls, cycloalkyls, alkenyls, alkynyls, aryls, other heterocycles, hydroxyl, amino, nitro, thiol, amines, imines, amides, phosphonates, phosphines, carbonyls, carboxyls, silyls, ethers, thioethers, sulfonyls, selenoethers, ketones, aldehydes, esters, -CF₃, -CN, or the like. Heterocycles may also be bridged or fused to other cyclic groups 15 as described below.

The term "polycyclic group" as used herein is intended to refer to two or more 15 saturated or unsaturated (*i.e.*, aromatic) cyclic rings in which two or more carbons are common to two adjoining rings, *e.g.*, the rings are "fused rings". Rings that are joined through non-adjacent atoms are termed "bridged" rings. Each of the rings of the 20 polycyclic group can be substituted with such substituents as described above, as for example, halogens, alkyls, cycloalkyls, alkenyls, alkynyls, hydroxyl, amino, nitro, thiol, amines, imines, amides, phosphonates, phosphines, carbonyls, carboxyls, silyls, ethers, 25 thioethers, sulfonyls, selenoethers, ketones, aldehydes, esters, -CF₃, -CN, or the like.

A preferred polycyclic group is a group containing a *cis*-decalin structure. 30 Although not intending to be limited by mechanism, it is thought that the "bent" conformation conferred on a modifying group by the presence of a *cis*-decalin structure 25 contributes to the efficacy of the modifying group in disrupting A β polymerization. Accordingly, other structures which mimic the "bent" configuration of the *cis*-decalin structure can also be used as modifying groups. An example of a *cis*-decalin containing 35 structure that can be used as a modifying group is a cholanoyl structure, such as a cholyl group. For example, a modulator compound can be modified at its amino terminus with 40 a cholyl group by reacting the aggregation core domain with cholic acid, a bile acid. Moreover, a modulator compound can be modified at its carboxy terminus with a cholyl

group according to methods known in the art (see e.g., Wess, G. *et al.* (1993)

Tetrahedron Letters, 34:817-822; Wess, G. *et al.* (1992) *Tetrahedron Letters* 33:195-198; and Kramer, W. *et al.* (1992) *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:18598-18604). Cholyl derivatives

and analogues can also be used as modifying groups. For example, a preferred cholyl

5 derivative is Aic (3-(*O*-aminoethyl-*iso*)-cholyl), which has a free amino group that can be used to further modify the modulator compound (e.g., a chelation group for ^{99m}Tc can be introduced through the free amino group of Aic). As used herein, the term "cholanoyl structure" is intended to include the cholyl group and derivatives and analogues thereof, in particular those which retain a four-ring *cis*-decalin configuration.

10 Examples of cholanoyl structures include groups derived from other bile acids, such as deoxycholic acid, lithocholic acid, ursodeoxycholic acid, chenodeoxycholic acid and hyodeoxycholic acid, as well as other related structures such as cholic acid, bufalin and resibufogenin (although the latter two compounds are not preferred for use as a modifying group). Another example of a *cis*-decalin containing compound is 5 β -cholestane-3 α -ol (the *cis*-decalin isomer of (+)-dihydrocholesterol). For further description of bile acid and steroid structure and nomenclature, see Nes, W.R. and McKean, M.L. *Biochemistry of Steroids and Other Isopentanoids*, University Park Press, Baltimore, MD, Chapter 2.

In addition to *cis*-decalin containing groups, other polycyclic groups may be used 20 as modifying groups. For example, modifying groups derived from steroids or β -lactams may be suitable modifying groups. In one embodiment, the modifying group is a "biotinyl structure", which includes biotinyl groups and analogues and derivatives thereof (such as a 2-iminobiotinyl group). In another embodiment, the modifying group can comprise a "fluorescein-containing group", such as a group derived from reacting an 25 $\text{A}\beta$ -derived peptidic structure with 5-(and 6)-carboxyfluorescein, succinimidyl ester or fluorescein isothiocyanate. In various other embodiments, the modifying group(s) can comprise an *N*-acetylneuraminy group, a *trans*-4-cotininecarboxyl group, a 2-imino-1-imidazolidineacetyl group, an (*S*)-(-)-indoline-2-carboxyl group, a (-)-menthoxycetyl group, a 2-norbornaneacetyl group, a γ -oxo-5-acenaphthenebutyryl, a (-)-2-oxo-4-30 thiazolidinecarboxyl group, a tetrahydro-3-furoyl group, a 2-iminobiotinyl group, a

diethylenetriaminepentaacetyl group, a 4-morpholinecarbonyl group, a 2-thiopheneacetyl group or a 2-thiophenesulfonyl group.

In addition to the cyclic, heterocyclic and polycyclic groups discussed above, other types of modifying groups can be used in a modulator of the invention. For 5 example, hydrophobic groups and branched alkyl groups may be suitable modifying groups. Examples include acetyl groups, phenylacetyl groups, phenylacetyl groups, diphenylacetyl groups, triphenylacetyl groups, isobutanoyl groups, 4-methylvaleryl groups, *trans*-cinnamoyl groups, butanoyl groups and 1-adamantanecarbonyl groups.

Yet another type of modifying group is a compound that contains a non-natural 10 amino acid that acts as a beta-turn mimetic, such as a dibenzofuran-based amino acid described in Tsang, K.Y. et al. (1994) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 116:3988-4005; Diaz, H and Kelly, J.W. (1991) *Tetrahedron Letters* 41:5725-5728; and Diaz, H et al. (1992) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 114:8316-8318. An example of such a modifying group is a peptide-15 aminoethyldibenzofuranyl-propionic acid (Adp) group (e.g., DDIIL-Adp) (SEQ ID NO: 31). This type of modifying group further can comprise one or more N-methyl peptide bonds to introduce additional steric hindrance to the aggregation of natural β -AP when compounds of this type interact with natural β -AP.

Yet another type of modifying group is an NH-OR group, where the R can be any of the modified or unmodified alkyl or cycloalkyl groups described herein.

20 Non-limiting examples of suitable modifying groups, with their corresponding modifying reagents, are listed below:

<u>Modifying Group</u>	<u>Modifying Reagent</u>
Methyl-	Methylamine, Fmoc-D-[Me]-Leu-OH, methylamine and a bromoacetylpeptide
Ethyl-	Ethylamine, acetaldehyde and sodium cyanoborohydride, ethylamine and a bromoacetylpeptide
Propyl-	Propylamine, propionaldehyde and sodium cyanoborohydride, propylamine and a bromoacetylpeptide
Isopropyl-	Isopropylamine, isopropylamine and a bromoacetylpeptide
Piperidine-	Piperidine and a bromoacetylpeptide
Acetyl-	Acetic anhydride, acetic acid
Dimethyl-	Methylamine, formaldehyde and sodium cyanoborohydride
Diethyl-	Acetaldehyde and sodium cyanoborohydride
Cholyl-	Cholic acid
Lithocholyl-	Lithocholic acid
Hyodeoxycholyl-	Hyodeoxycholic acid
Chenodeoxycholyl-	Chenodeoxycholic acid
Ursodeoxycholyl-	Ursodeoxycholic acid
3-Hydroxycinnamoyl-	3-Hydroxycinnamic acid
4-Hydroxycinnamoyl-	4-Hydroxycinnamic acid
2-Hydroxycinnamoyl-	2-Hydroxycinnamic acid
3-Hydroxy-4-methoxycinnamoyl-	3-Hydroxy-4-methoxycinnamic acid
4-Hydroxy-3-methoxycinnamoyl-	4-Hydroxy-3-methoxycinnamic acid
2-Carboxycinnamoyl-	2-Carboxycinnamic acid

3-Formylbenzoyl	3-Carboxybenzaldehyde
4-Formylbenzoyl	4-Carboxybenzaldehyde
3,4,-Dihydroxyhydrocinnamoyl-	3,4,-Dihydroxyhydrocinnamic acid
3,7-Dihydroxy-2-naphthoyl-	3,7-Dihydroxy-2-naphthoic acid
4-Formylcinnamoyl-	4-Formylcinnamic acid
2-Formylphenoxyacetyl-	2-Formylphenoxyacetic acid
8-Formyl-1-naphthoyl	1,8-naphthaldehydic acid
4-(hydroxymethyl)benzoyl-	4-(hydroxymethyl)benzoic acid
4-Hydroxyphenylacetyl-	4-Hydroxyphenylacetic acid
3-Hydroxybenzoyl-	3-Hydroxybenzoic acid
4-Hydroxybenzoyl-	4-Hydroxybenzoic acid
5-Hydantoinacetyl-	5-Hydantoinacetic acid
L-Hydroorotyl-	L-Hydroorotic acid
4-Methylvaleryl-	4-Methylvaleric acid
2,4-Dihydroxybenzoyl-	2,4-Dihydroxybenzoic acid
3,4-Dihydroxycinnamoyl-	3,4-Dihydroxycinnamic acid
3,5-Dihydroxy-2-naphthoyl-	3,5-Dihydroxy-2-naphthoic acid
3-Benzoylpropanoyl-	3-Benzoylpropanoic acid
<i>trans</i> -Cinnamoyl-	<i>trans</i> -Cinnamic acid
Phenylacetyl-	Phenylacetic acid
Diphenylacetyl-	Diphenylacetic acid
Triphenylacetyl-	Triphenylacetic acid
2-Hydroxyphenylacetyl-	2-Hydroxyphenylacetic acid
3-Hydroxyphenylacetyl-	3-Hydroxyphenylacetic acid
4-Hydroxyphenylacetyl-	4-Hydroxyphenylacetic acid
(±)-Mandelyl-	(±)-Mandelic acid
(±)-2,4-Dihydroxy-3,3-dimethylbutanoyl	(±)-Pantolactone
Butanoyl-	Butanoic anhydride
Isobutanoyl-	Isobutanoic anhydride
Hexanoyl-	Hexanoic anhydride

Propionyl-	Propionic anhydride
3-Hydroxybutyroyl	β -Butyrolactone
4-Hydroxybutyroyl	γ -Butyrolactone
3-Hydroxypropionoyl	β -Propiolactone
2,4-Dihydroxybutyroyl	α -Hydroxy- β -Butyrolactone
1-Adamantanecarbonyl-	1-Adamantanecarbonic acid
Glycolyl-	Glycolic acid
DL-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)lactyl-	DL-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)lactic acid
3-(2-Hydroxyphenyl)propionyl-	3-(2-Hydroxyphenyl)propionic acid
4-(2-Hydroxyphenyl)propionyl-	4-(2-Hydroxyphenyl)propionic acid
D-3-Phenyllactyl-	D-3-Phenyllactic acid
Hydrocinnamoyl-	Hydrocinnamic acid
3-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)propionyl-	3-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)propionic acid
L-3-Phenyllactyl-	L-3-Phenyllactic acid
4-methylvaleryl	4-methylvaleric acid
3-pyridylacetyl	3-pyridylacetic acid
4-pyridylacetyl	4-pyridylacetic acid
Isonicotinoyl	
4-quinolinecarboxyl	4-quinolinecarboxylic acid
1-isoquinolinecarboxyl	1-isoquinolinecarboxylic acid
3-isoquinolinecarboxyl	3-isoquinolinecarboxylic acid

Preferred modifying groups include methyl-containing groups, ethyl-containing groups, propyl-containing groups, and piperidine-containing groups, e.g., a 1-piperidine-acetyl group.

III. Additional Chemical Modifications of A β Modulators

A β -amyloid modulator compound of the invention can be further modified to alter the specific properties of the compound while retaining the ability of the compound to alter A β aggregation and inhibit A β neurotoxicity. For example, in one embodiment,

the compound is further modified to alter a pharmacokinetic property of the compound, such as *in vivo* stability or half-life. In another embodiment, the compound is further modified to label the compound with a detectable substance. In yet another embodiment, the compound is further modified to couple the compound to an additional therapeutic moiety. Schematically, a modulator of the invention comprising a D-amino acid A β aggregation core domain coupled directly or indirectly to at least one modifying group can be illustrated as MG-ACD, whereas this compound which has been further modified to alter the properties of the modulator can be illustrated as MG-ACD-CM, wherein CM represents an additional chemical modification.

10 To further chemically modify the compound, such as to alter the pharmacokinetic properties of the compound, reactive groups can be derivatized. For example, when the modifying group is attached to the amino-terminal end of the aggregation core domain, the carboxy-terminal end of the compound can be further modified. Preferred C-terminal modifications include those which reduce the ability of 15 the compound to act as a substrate for carboxypeptidases. Examples of preferred C-terminal modifiers include an amide group (*i.e.*, a peptide amide), an alkyl or aryl amide group (*e.g.*, an ethylamide group or a phenethylamide group) a hydroxy group (*i.e.*, a peptide alcohol) and various non-natural amino acids, such as D-amino acids and β -alanine. Alternatively, when the modifying group is attached to the carboxy-terminal 20 end of the aggregation core domain, the amino-terminal end of the compound can be further modified, for example, to reduce the ability of the compound to act as a substrate for aminopeptidases.

A modulator compound can be further modified to label the compound by reacting the compound with a detectable substance. Suitable detectable substances 25 include various enzymes, prosthetic groups, fluorescent materials, luminescent materials and radioactive materials. Examples of suitable enzymes include horseradish peroxidase, alkaline phosphatase, β -galactosidase, or acetylcholinesterase; examples of suitable prosthetic group complexes include streptavidin/biotin and avidin/biotin; examples of suitable fluorescent materials include umbelliferone, fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate, rhodamine, dichlorotriazinylamine fluorescein, dansyl 30

chloride or phycoerythrin; an example of a luminescent material includes luminol; and examples of suitable radioactive material include ^{14}C , ^{123}I , ^{124}I , ^{125}I , ^{131}I , $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$, ^{35}S or ^{3}H . In a preferred embodiment, a modulator compound is radioactively labeled with ^{14}C , either by incorporation of ^{14}C into the modifying group or one or more amino acid structures in the modulator compound. Labeled modulator compounds can be used to assess the *in vivo* pharmacokinetics of the compounds, as well as to detect A β aggregation, for example for diagnostic purposes. A β aggregation can be detected using a labeled modulator compound either *in vivo* or in an *in vitro* sample derived from a subject.

10 Preferably, for use as an *in vivo* diagnostic agent, a modulator compound of the invention is labeled with radioactive technetium or iodine. Accordingly, in one embodiment, the invention provides a modulator compound labeled with technetium, preferably $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$. Methods for labeling peptide compounds with technetium are known in the art (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,443,815, 5,225,180 and 5,405,597, all by Dean *et al.*; Stepniak-Biniakiewicz, D., *et al.* (1992) *J. Med. Chem.* 35:274-279; Fritzberg, A.R., *et al.* (1988) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85:4025-4029; Baidoo, K.E., *et al.* (1990) *Cancer Res. Suppl.* 50:799s-803s; and Regan, L. and Smith, C.K. (1995) *Science* 270:980-982). A modifying group can be chosen that provides a site at which a chelation group for $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$ can be introduced, such as the Aic derivative of cholic acid, 20 which has a free amino group. In another embodiment, the invention provides a modulator compound labeled with radioactive iodine. For example, a phenylalanine residue within the A β sequence (such as Phe₁₉ or Phe₂₀) can be substituted with radioactive iodotyrosyl. Any of the various isotopes of radioactive iodine can be incorporated to create a diagnostic agent. Preferably, ^{123}I (half-life = 13.2 hours) is used 25 for whole body scintigraphy, ^{124}I (half life = 4 days) is used for positron emission tomography (PET), ^{125}I (half life = 60 days) is used for metabolic turnover studies and ^{131}I (half life = 8 days) is used for whole body counting and delayed low resolution imaging studies.

Furthermore, an additional modification of a modulator compound of the invention can serve to confer an additional therapeutic property on the compound. That is, the additional chemical modification can comprise an additional functional moiety. For example, a functional moiety which serves to break down or dissolve amyloid plaques can be coupled to the modulator compound. In this form, the MG-ACD portion of the modulator serves to target the compound to A β peptides and disrupt the polymerization of the A β peptides, whereas the additional functional moiety serves to break down or dissolve amyloid plaques after the compound has been targeted to these sites.

In an alternative chemical modification, a β -amyloid compound of the invention is prepared in a "prodrug" form, wherein the compound itself does not modulate A β aggregation, but rather is capable of being transformed, upon metabolism *in vivo*, into a β -amyloid modulator compound as defined herein. For example, in this type of compound, the modulating group can be present in a prodrug form that is capable of being converted upon metabolism into the form of an active modulating group. Such a prodrug form of a modifying group is referred to herein as a "secondary modifying group." A variety of strategies are known in the art for preparing peptide prodrugs that limit metabolism in order to optimize delivery of the active form of the peptide-based drug (see *e.g.*, Moss, J. (1995) in *Peptide-Based Drug Design: Controlling Transport and Metabolism*, Taylor, M.D. and Amidon, G.L. (eds), Chapter 18. Additionally strategies have been specifically tailored to achieving CNS delivery based on "sequential metabolism" (see *e.g.*, Bodor, N., *et al.* (1992) *Science* 257:1698-1700; Prokai, L., *et al.* (1994) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 116:2643-2644; Bodor, N. and Prokai, L. (1995) in *Peptide-Based Drug Design: Controlling Transport and Metabolism*, Taylor, M.D. and Amidon, G.L. (eds), Chapter 14. In one embodiment of a prodrug form of a modulator of the invention, the modifying group comprises an alkyl ester to facilitate blood-brain barrier permeability.

Modulator compounds of the invention can be prepared by standard techniques known in the art. The peptide component of a modulator can be synthesized using standard techniques such as those described in Bodansky, M. *Principles of Peptide*

Synthesis, Springer Verlag, Berlin (1993) and Grant, G.A (ed.). *Synthetic Peptides: A User's Guide*, W.H. Freeman and Company, New York (1992). Automated peptide synthesizers are commercially available (e.g., Advanced ChemTech Model 396; Milligen/ Biosearch 9600). Additionally, one or more modulating groups can be

5 attached to the A β -derived peptidic component (e.g., an A β aggregation core domain) by standard methods, for example using methods for reaction through an amino group (e.g., the alpha-amino group at the amino-terminus of a peptide), a carboxyl group (e.g., at the carboxy terminus of a peptide), a hydroxyl group (e.g., on a tyrosine, serine or threonine residue) or other suitable reactive group on an amino acid side chain (see e.g.,

10 Greene, T.W and Wuts, P.G.M. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York (1991). Exemplary syntheses of D-amino acid β amyloid modulator are described further in Example 1.

IV. Screening Assays

15 Another aspect of the invention pertains to a method for selecting a modulator of β -amyloid aggregation. In the method, a test compound is contacted with natural β amyloid peptides, the aggregation of the natural β -AP is measured and a modulator is selected based on the ability of the test compound to alter the aggregation of the natural β -AP (e.g., inhibit or promote aggregation). In a preferred embodiment, the test

20 compound is contacted with a molar excess amount of the natural β -AP. The amount and/or rate of natural β -AP aggregation in the presence of the test compound can be determined by a suitable assay indicative of β -AP aggregation, as described herein (see e.g., Example 2).

In a preferred assay, the natural β -AP is dissolved in solution in the presence of

25 the test compound and aggregation of the natural β -AP is assessed in a nucleation assay (see Example 2) by assessing the turbidity of the solution over time, as measured by the apparent absorbance of the solution at 405 nm (described further in Example 2; see also Jarrett *et al.* (1993) *Biochemistry* 32:4693-4697). In the absence of a β -amyloid modulator, the A_{405nm} of the solution typically stays relatively constant during a lag

30 time in which the β -AP remains in solution, but then the A_{405nm} of the solution rapidly

increases as the β -AP aggregates and comes out of solution, ultimately reaching a plateau level (*i.e.*, the A_{405nm} of the solution exhibits sigmoidal kinetics over time). In contrast, in the presence of a test compound that inhibits β -AP aggregation, the A_{405nm} of the solution is reduced compared to when the modulator is absent. Thus, in the 5 presence of the inhibitory modulator, the solution may exhibit an increased lag time, a decreased slope of aggregation and/or a lower plateau level compared to when the modulator is absent. This method for selecting a modulator of β -amyloid polymerization can similarly be used to select modulators that promote β -AP aggregation. Thus, in the presence of a modulator that promotes β -AP aggregation, the 10 A_{405nm} of the solution is increased compared to when the modulator is absent (*e.g.*, the solution may exhibit an decreased lag time, increase slope of aggregation and/or a higher plateau level compared to when the modulator is absent).

Another assay suitable for use in the screening method of the invention, a seeded extension assay, is also described further in Example 2. In this assay, β -AP monomer 15 and an aggregated β -AP "seed" are combined, in the presence and absence of a test compound, and the amount of β -fibril formation is assayed based on enhanced emission of the dye Thioflavine T when contacted with β -AP fibrils. Moreover, β -AP aggregation can be assessed by electron microscopy (EM) of the β -AP preparation in the presence or absence of the modulator. For example, β amyloid fibril formation, which is 20 detectable by EM, is reduced in the presence of a modulator that inhibits β -AP aggregation (*i.e.*, there is a reduced amount or number of β -fibrils in the presence of the modulator), whereas β fibril formation is increased in the presence of a modulator that promotes β -AP aggregation (*i.e.*, there is an increased amount or number of β -fibrils in the presence of the modulator).

25 Another preferred assay for use in the screening method of the invention to select suitable modulators is the neurotoxicity assay described in Example 3. Compounds are selected which inhibit the formation of neurotoxic $A\beta$ aggregates and/or which inhibit the neurotoxicity of preformed $A\beta$ fibrils. This neurotoxicity assay is considered to be predictive of neurotoxicity *in vivo*. Accordingly, inhibitory activity of a modulator

compound in the *in vitro* neurotoxicity assay is predictive of similar inhibitory activity of the compound for neurotoxicity *in vivo*.

V. Pharmaceutical Compositions

5 Another aspect of the invention pertains to pharmaceutical compositions of the β -amyloid modulator compounds of the invention. In one embodiment, the composition includes a β amyloid modulator compound in a therapeutically or prophylactically effective amount sufficient to alter, and preferably inhibit, aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptides, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. In another embodiment,

10 10 the composition includes a β amyloid modulator compound in a therapeutically or prophylactically effective amount sufficient to inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. A "therapeutically effective amount" refers to an amount effective, at dosages and for periods of time necessary, to achieve the desired therapeutic result, such as reduction or reversal or β -

15 15 amyloid deposition and/or reduction or reversal of A β neurotoxicity. A therapeutically effective amount of modulator may vary according to factors such as the disease state, age, sex, and weight of the individual, and the ability of the modulator to elicit a desired response in the individual. Dosage regimens may be adjusted to provide the optimum therapeutic response. A therapeutically effective amount is also one in which any toxic

20 20 or detrimental effects of the modulator are outweighed by the therapeutically beneficial effects. The potential neurotoxicity of the modulators of the invention can be assayed using the cell-based assay described in Example 6 and a therapeutically effective modulator can be selected which does not exhibit significant neurotoxicity. In a preferred embodiment, a therapeutically effective amount of a modulator is sufficient to

25 25 alter, and preferably inhibit, aggregation of a molar excess amount of natural β -amyloid peptides. A "prophylactically effective amount" refers to an amount effective, at dosages and for periods of time necessary, to achieve the desired prophylactic result, such as preventing or inhibiting the rate of β -amyloid deposition and/or A β neurotoxicity in a subject predisposed to β -amyloid deposition. A prophylactically effective amount can be determined as described above for the therapeutically effective

30

amount. Typically, since a prophylactic dose is used in subjects prior to or at an earlier stage of disease, the prophylactically effective amount will be less than the therapeutically effective amount.

One factor that may be considered when determining a therapeutically or prophylactically effective amount of a β amyloid modulator is the concentration of natural β -AP in a biological compartment of a subject, such as in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of the subject. The concentration of natural β -AP in the CSF has been estimated at 3 nM (Schwartzman, (1994) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:8368-8372). A non-limiting range for a therapeutically or prophylactically effective amounts of a β amyloid modulator is 0.01 nM-10 μ M. It is to be noted that dosage values may vary with the severity of the condition to be alleviated. It is to be further understood that for any particular subject, specific dosage regimens should be adjusted over time according to the individual need and the professional judgment of the person administering or supervising the administration of the compositions, and that dosage ranges set forth herein are exemplary only and are not intended to limit the scope or practice of the claimed composition.

The amount of active compound in the composition may vary according to factors such as the disease state, age, sex, and weight of the individual, each of which may affect the amount of natural β -AP in the individual. Dosage regimens may be adjusted to provide the optimum therapeutic response. For example, a single bolus may be administered, several divided doses may be administered over time or the dose may be proportionally reduced or increased as indicated by the exigencies of the therapeutic situation. It is especially advantageous to formulate parenteral compositions in dosage unit form for ease of administration and uniformity of dosage. Dosage unit form as used herein refers to physically discrete units suited as unitary dosages for the mammalian subjects to be treated; each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active compound calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect in association with the required pharmaceutical carrier. The specification for the dosage unit forms of the invention are dictated by and directly dependent on (a) the unique characteristics of the active compound and the particular therapeutic effect to be achieved, and (b) the limitations

inherent in the art of compounding such an active compound for the treatment of sensitivity in individuals.

As used herein "pharmaceutically acceptable carrier" includes any and all solvents, dispersion media, coatings, antibacterial and antifungal agents, isotonic and absorption delaying agents, and the like that are physiologically compatible. In one embodiment, the carrier is suitable for parenteral administration. Preferably, the carrier is suitable for administration into the central nervous system (e.g., intraspinally or intracerebrally). Alternatively, the carrier can be suitable for intravenous, intraperitoneal or intramuscular administration. In another embodiment, the carrier is suitable for oral administration. Pharmaceutically acceptable carriers include sterile aqueous solutions or dispersions and sterile powders for the extemporaneous preparation of sterile injectable solutions or dispersion. The use of such media and agents for pharmaceutically active substances is well known in the art. Except insofar as any conventional media or agent is incompatible with the active compound, use thereof in the pharmaceutical compositions of the invention is contemplated. Supplementary active compounds can also be incorporated into the compositions.

Therapeutic compositions typically must be sterile and stable under the conditions of manufacture and storage. The composition can be formulated as a solution, microemulsion, liposome, or other ordered structure suitable to high drug concentration. The carrier can be a solvent or dispersion medium containing, for example, water, ethanol, polyol (for example, glycerol, propylene glycol, and liquid polyethylene glycol, and the like), and suitable mixtures thereof. The proper fluidity can be maintained, for example, by the use of a coating such as lecithin, by the maintenance of the required particle size in the case of dispersion and by the use of surfactants. In many cases, it will be preferable to include isotonic agents, for example, sugars, polyalcohols such as manitol, sorbitol, or sodium chloride in the composition. Prolonged absorption of the injectable compositions can be brought about by including in the composition an agent which delays absorption, for example, monostearate salts and gelatin. Moreover, the modulators can be administered in a time release formulation, for example in a composition which includes a slow release polymer. The active compounds can be prepared with carriers that will protect the compound against rapid release, such as a controlled release formulation,

including implants and microencapsulated delivery systems. Biodegradable, biocompatible polymers can be used, such as ethylene vinyl acetate, polyanhydrides, polyglycolic acid, collagen, polyorthoesters, polylactic acid and polylactic, polyglycolic copolymers (PLG). Many methods for the preparation of such formulations are patented 5 or generally known to those skilled in the art.

Sterile injectable solutions can be prepared by incorporating the active compound (e.g., β -amyloid modulator) in the required amount in an appropriate solvent with one or a combination of ingredients enumerated above, as required, followed by filtered sterilization. Generally, dispersions are prepared by incorporating the active 10 compound into a sterile vehicle which contains a basic dispersion medium and the required other ingredients from those enumerated above. In the case of sterile powders for the preparation of sterile injectable solutions, the preferred methods of preparation are vacuum drying and freeze-drying which yields a powder of the active ingredient plus any additional desired ingredient from a previously sterile-filtered solution thereof.

15 A modulator compound of the invention can be formulated with one or more additional compounds that enhance the solubility of the modulator compound. Preferred compounds to be added to formulations to enhance the solubility of the modulators are cyclodextrin derivatives, preferably hydroxypropyl- γ -cyclodextrin. Drug delivery vehicles containing a cyclodextrin derivative for delivery of peptides to the central 20 nervous system are described in Bodor, N., *et al.* (1992) *Science* 257:1698-1700. For the β -amyloid modulators described herein, inclusion in the formulation of hydroxypropyl- γ -cyclodextrin at a concentration 50-200 mM increases the aqueous 25 solubility of the compounds. In addition to increased solubility, inclusion of a cyclodextrin derivative in the formulation may have other beneficial effects, since β -cyclodextrin itself has been reported to interact with the A β peptide and inhibit fibril formation *in vitro* (Camilleri, P., *et al.* (1994) *FEBS Letters* 341:256-258. Accordingly, use of a modulator compound of the invention in combination with a cyclodextrin derivative may result in greater inhibition of A β aggregation than use of the modulator alone. Chemical modifications of cyclodextrins are known in the art (Hanessian, S., *et* 30 *al.* (1995) *J. Org. Chem.* 60:4786-4797). In addition to use as an additive in a

pharmaceutical composition containing a modulator of the invention, cyclodextrin derivatives may also be useful as modifying groups and, accordingly, may also be covalently coupled to an A_β peptide compound to form a modulator compound of the invention.

5 Another preferred formulation for the modulator compounds to enhance brain uptake comprises the detergent Tween-80, polyethylene glycol (PEG) and ethanol in a saline solution. A non-limiting example of such a preferred formulation is 0.16% Tween-80, 1.3% PEG-3000 and 2% ethanol in saline.

In another embodiment, a pharmaceutical composition comprising a modulator 10 of the invention is formulated such that the modulator is transported across the blood-brain barrier (BBB). Various strategies known in the art for increasing transport across the BBB can be adapted to the modulators of the invention to thereby enhance transport of the modulators across the BBB (for reviews of such strategies, see e.g., Pardridge, W.M. (1994) *Trends in Biotechnol.* 12:239-245; Van Bree, J.B. *et al.* (1993) *Pharm. 15 World Sci.* 15:2-9; and Pardridge, W.M. *et al.* (1992) *Pharmacol. Toxicol.* 71:3-10). In one approach, the modulator is chemically modified to form a prodrug with enhanced transmembrane transport. Suitable chemical modifications include covalent linking of a fatty acid to the modulator through an amide or ester linkage (see e.g., U.S. Patent 4,933,324 and PCT Publication WO 89/07938, both by Shashoua; U.S. Patent 5,284,876 20 by Hesse *et al.*; Toth, I. *et al.* (1994) *J. Drug Target.* 2:217-239; and Shashoua, V.E. *et al.* (1984) *J. Med. Chem.* 27:659-664) and glycating the modulator (see e.g., U.S. Patent 5,260,308 by Poduslo *et al.*). Also, N-acylamino acid derivatives may be used in a modulator to form a "lipidic" prodrug (see e.g., 5,112,863 by Hashimoto *et al.*).

In another approach for enhancing transport across the BBB, a peptidic or 25 peptidomimetic modulator is conjugated to a second peptide or protein, thereby forming a chimeric protein, wherein the second peptide or protein undergoes absorptive-mediated or receptor-mediated transcytosis through the BBB. Accordingly, by coupling the modulator to this second peptide or protein, the chimeric protein is transported across the BBB. The second peptide or protein can be a ligand for a brain capillary endothelial 30 cell receptor ligand. For example, a preferred ligand is a monoclonal antibody that specifically binds to the transferrin receptor on brain capillary endothelial cells (see e.g.,

U.S. Patents 5,182,107 and 5,154,924 and PCT Publications WO 93/10819 and WO 95/02421, all by Friden *et al.*). Other suitable peptides or proteins that can mediate transport across the BBB include histones (see e.g., U.S. Patent 4,902,505 by Pardridge and Schimmel) and ligands such as biotin, folate, niacin, pantothenic acid, riboflavin, 5 thiamin, pyridoxal and ascorbic acid (see e.g., U.S. Patents 5,416,016 and 5,108,921, both by Heinstein). Additionally, the glucose transporter GLUT-1 has been reported to transport glycopeptides (L-serinyl- β -D-glucoside analogues of [Met5]enkephalin) across the BBB (Polt, R. *et al.* (1994) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:7114-1778). Accordingly, a modulator compound can be coupled to such a glycopeptide to target the modulator to 10 the GLUT-1 glucose transporter. For example, a modulator compound which is modified at its amino terminus with the modifying group Aic (3-(*O*-aminoethyl-*iso*)-cholyl, a derivative of cholic acid having a free amino group) can be coupled to a glycopeptide through the amino group of Aic by standard methods. Chimeric proteins can be formed by recombinant DNA methods (e.g., by formation of a chimeric gene 15 encoding a fusion protein) or by chemical crosslinking of the modulator to the second peptide or protein to form a chimeric protein. Numerous chemical crosslinking agents are known in the (e.g., commercially available from Pierce, Rockford IL). A crosslinking agent can be chosen which allows for high yield coupling of the modulator to the second peptide or protein and for subsequent cleavage of the linker to release 20 bioactive modulator. For example, a biotin-avidin-based linker system may be used.

In yet another approach for enhancing transport across the BBB, the modulator is encapsulated in a carrier vector which mediates transport across the BBB. For example, the modulator can be encapsulated in a liposome, such as a positively charged unilamellar liposome (see e.g., PCT Publications WO 88/07851 and WO 88/07852, both 25 by Faden) or in polymeric microspheres (see e.g., U.S. Patent 5,413,797 by Khan *et al.*, U.S. Patent 5,271,961 by Mathiowitz *et al.* and 5,019,400 by Gombotz *et al.*). Moreover, the carrier vector can be modified to target it for transport across the BBB. For example, the carrier vector (e.g., liposome) can be covalently modified with a molecule which is actively transported across the BBB or with a ligand for brain 30 endothelial cell receptors, such as a monoclonal antibody that specifically binds to

transferrin receptors (see *e.g.*, PCT Publications WO 91/04014 by Collins *et al.* and WO 94/02178 by Greig *et al.*).

In still another approach to enhancing transport of the modulator across the BBB, the modulator is coadministered with another agent which functions to permeabilize the

5 BBB. Examples of such BBB "permeabilizers" include bradykinin and bradykinin agonists (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patent 5,112,596 by Malfroy-Camine) and peptidic compounds disclosed in U.S. Patent 5,268,164 by Kozarich *et al.*

Assays that measure the *in vitro* stability of the modulator compounds in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and the degree of brain uptake of the modulator compounds in 10 animal models can be used as predictors of *in vivo* efficacy of the compounds. Suitable assays for measuring CSF stability and brain uptake are described in Examples 7 and 8, respectively.

A modulator compound of the invention can be formulated into a pharmaceutical composition wherein the modulator is the only active compound or, alternatively, the 15 pharmaceutical composition can contain additional active compounds. For example, two or more modulator compounds may be used in combination. Moreover, a modulator compound of the invention can be combined with one or more other agents that have anti-amyloidogenic properties. For example, a modulator compound can be combined with the non-specific cholinesterase inhibitor tacrine (COGNEX®, Parke- 20 Davis).

In another embodiment, a pharmaceutical composition of the invention is provided as a packaged formulation. The packaged formulation may include a pharmaceutical composition of the invention in a container and printed instructions for administration of the composition for treating a subject having a disorder associated with 25 β -amyloidosis, *e.g.* Alzheimer's disease.

VI. Methods of Using A β Modulators

Another aspect of the invention pertains to methods for altering the aggregation or inhibiting the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides. In the methods of the 30 invention, natural β amyloid peptides are contacted with a β amyloid modulator such

that the aggregation of the natural β amyloid peptides is altered or the neurotoxicity of the natural β amyloid peptides is inhibited. In a preferred embodiment, the modulator inhibits aggregation of the natural β amyloid peptides. In another embodiment, the modulator promotes aggregation of the natural β amyloid peptides. Preferably, 5 aggregation of a molar excess amount of β -AP, relative to the amount of modulator, is altered upon contact with the modulator.

In the method of the invention, natural β amyloid peptides can be contacted with a modulator either *in vitro* or *in vivo*. Thus, the term "contacted with" is intended to encompass both incubation of a modulator with a natural β -AP preparation *in vitro* and 10 delivery of the modulator to a site *in vivo* where natural β -AP is present. Since the modulator compound interacts with natural β -AP, the modulator compounds can be used to detect natural β -AP, either *in vitro* or *in vivo*. Accordingly, one use of the modulator compounds of the invention is as diagnostic agents to detect the presence of natural β -AP, either in a biological sample or *in vivo* in a subject. Furthermore, detection of 15 natural β -AP utilizing a modulator compound of the invention further can be used to diagnose amyloidosis in a subject. Additionally, since the modulator compounds of the invention disrupt β -AP aggregation and inhibit β -AP neurotoxicity, the modulator compounds also are useful in the treatment of disorders associated with β -amyloidosis, either prophylactically or therapeutically. Accordingly, another use of the modulator 20 compounds of the invention is as therapeutic agents to alter aggregation and/or neurotoxicity of natural β -AP.

In one embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention is used *in vitro*, for example to detect and quantitate natural β -AP in sample (e.g., a sample of biological fluid). To aid in detection, the modulator compound can be modified with a detectable 25 substance. The source of natural β -AP used in the method can be, for example, a sample of cerebrospinal fluid (e.g., from an AD patient, an adult susceptible to AD due to family history, or a normal adult). The natural β -AP sample is contacted with a modulator of the invention and aggregation of the β -AP is measured, such as by the assays described in Example 2. The degree of aggregation of the β -AP sample can then be compared to

that of a control sample(s) of a known concentration of β -AP, similarly contacted with the modulator and the results can be used as an indication of whether a subject is susceptible to or has a disorder associated with β -amyloidosis. Moreover, β -AP can be detected by detecting a modulating group incorporated into the modulator. For example, 5 modulators incorporating a biotin compound as described herein (e.g., an amino- terminally biotinylated β -AP peptide) can be detected using a streptavidin or avidin probe which is labeled with a detectable substance (e.g., an enzyme, such as peroxidase).

In another embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention is used *in vivo* to detect, and, if desired, quantitate, natural β -AP deposition in a subject, for example to 10 aid in the diagnosis of β amyloidosis in the subject. To aid in detection, the modulator compound can be modified with a detectable substance, preferably ^{99m}Tc or radioactive iodine (described further above), which can be detected *in vivo* in a subject. The labeled β -amyloid modulator compound is administered to the subject and, after sufficient time to allow accumulation of the modulator at sites of amyloid deposition, the labeled 15 modulator compound is detected by standard imaging techniques. The radioactive signal generated by the labeled compound can be directly detected (e.g., whole body counting), or alternatively, the radioactive signal can be converted into an image on an autoradiograph or on a computer screen to allow for imaging of amyloid deposits in the subject. Methods for imaging amyloidosis using radiolabeled proteins are known in the 20 art. For example, serum amyloid P component (SAP), radiolabeled with either ^{123}I or ^{99m}Tc , has been used to image systemic amyloidosis (see e.g., Hawkins, P.N. and Pepys, M.B. (1995) *Eur. J. Nucl. Med.* 22:595-599). Of the various isotopes of radioactive iodine, preferably ^{123}I (half-life = 13.2 hours) is used for whole body scintigraphy, ^{124}I (half life = 4 days) is used for positron emission tomography (PET), 25 ^{125}I (half life = 60 days) is used for metabolic turnover studies and ^{131}I (half life = 8 days) is used for whole body counting and delayed low resolution imaging studies. Analogous to studies using radiolabeled SAP, a labeled modulator compound of the invention can be delivered to a subject by an appropriate route (e.g., intravenously, intraspinally, intracerebrally) in a single bolus, for example containing 100 μg of labeled 30 compound carrying approximately 180 MBq of radioactivity.

- 49 -

The invention provides a method for detecting the presence or absence of natural β -amyloid peptides in a biological sample, comprising contacting a biological sample with a compound of the invention and detecting the compound bound to natural β -amyloid peptides to thereby detect the presence or absence of natural β -amyloid peptides 5 in the biological sample. In one embodiment, the β -amyloid modulator compound and the biological sample are contacted *in vitro*. In another embodiment, the β -amyloid modulator compound is contacted with the biological sample by administering the β -amyloid modulator compound to a subject. For *in vivo* administration, preferably the compound is labeled with radioactive technetium or radioactive iodine.

10 The invention also provides a method for detecting natural β -amyloid peptides to facilitate diagnosis of a β -amyloidogenic disease, comprising contacting a biological sample with the compound of the invention and detecting the compound bound to natural β -amyloid peptides to facilitate diagnosis of a β -amyloidogenic disease. In one embodiment, the β -amyloid modulator compound and the biological sample are 15 contacted *in vitro*. In another embodiment, the β -amyloid modulator compound is contacted with the biological sample by administering the β -amyloid modulator compound to a subject. For *in vivo* administration, preferably the compound is labeled with radioactive technetium or radioactive iodine. Preferably, use of the method facilitates diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease.

20 In another embodiment, the invention provides a method for altering natural β -AP aggregation or inhibiting β -AP neurotoxicity, which can be used prophylactically or therapeutically in the treatment or prevention of disorders associated with β amyloidosis, *e.g.*, Alzheimer's Disease. Modulator compounds of the invention can reduce the toxicity of natural β -AP aggregates to cultured neuronal cells. Moreover, the 25 modulators also have the ability to reduce the neurotoxicity of preformed A β fibrils. Accordingly, the modulator compounds of the invention can be used to inhibit or prevent the formation of neurotoxic A β fibrils in subjects (*e.g.*, prophylactically in a subject predisposed to β -amyloid deposition) and can be used to reverse β -amyloidosis therapeutically in subjects already exhibiting β -amyloid deposition.

A modulator of the invention is contacted with natural β amyloid peptides present in a subject (e.g., in the cerebrospinal fluid or cerebrum of the subject) to thereby alter the aggregation of the natural β -AP and/or inhibit the neurotoxicity of the natural β -APs. A modulator compound alone can be administered to the subject, or

5 alternatively, the modulator compound can be administered in combination with other therapeutically active agents (e.g., as discussed above in subsection IV). When combination therapy is employed, the therapeutic agents can be coadministered in a single pharmaceutical composition, coadministered in separate pharmaceutical compositions or administered sequentially.

10 The modulator may be administered to a subject by any suitable route effective for inhibiting natural β -AP aggregation in the subject, although in a particularly preferred embodiment, the modulator is administered parenterally, most preferably to the central nervous system of the subject. Possible routes of CNS administration include intraspinal administration and intracerebral administration (e.g., intracerebrovascular administration). Alternatively, the compound can be administered, for example, orally, intraperitoneally, intravenously or intramuscularly. For non-CNS administration routes, the compound can be administered in a formulation which allows for transport across the BBB. Certain modulators may be transported across the BBB without any additional further modification whereas others may need further modification as described above in

15 subsection IV.

20 Suitable modes and devices for delivery of therapeutic compounds to the CNS of a subject are known in the art, including cerebrovascular reservoirs (e.g., Ommaya or Rikker reservoirs; see e.g., Raney, J.P. *et al.* (1988) *J. Neurosci. Nurs.* 20:23-29; Sundaresan, N. *et al.* (1989) *Oncology* 3:15-22), catheters for intrathecal delivery (e.g.,

25 Port-a-Cath, Y-catheters and the like; see e.g., Plummer, J.L. (1991) *Pain* 44:215-220; Yaksh, T.L. *et al.* (1986) *Pharmacol. Biochem. Behav.* 25:483-485), injectable intrathecal reservoirs (e.g., Spinalgesic; see e.g., Brazenor, G.A. (1987) *Neurosurgery* 21:484-491), implantable infusion pump systems (e.g., Infusaid; see e.g., Zierski, J. *et al.* (1988) *Acta Neurochem. Suppl.* 43:94-99; Kanoff, R.B. (1994) *J. Am. Osteopath.*

30 *Assoc.* 94:487-493) and osmotic pumps (sold by Alza Corporation). A particularly

preferred mode of administration is via an implantable, externally programmable infusion pump. Suitable infusion pump systems and reservoir systems are also described in U.S. Patent No. 5, 368,562 by Blomquist and U.S. Patent No. 4,731,058 by Doan, developed by Pharmacia Deltec Inc.

5 The method of the invention for altering β -AP aggregation *in vivo*, and in particular for inhibiting β -AP aggregation, can be used therapeutically in diseases associated with abnormal β amyloid aggregation and deposition to thereby slow the rate of β amyloid deposition and/or lessen the degree of β amyloid deposition, thereby ameliorating the course of the disease. In a preferred embodiment, the method is used to
10 treat Alzheimer's disease (e.g., sporadic or familial AD, including both individuals exhibiting symptoms of AD and individuals susceptible to familial AD). The method can also be used prophylactically or therapeutically to treat other clinical occurrences of β amyloid deposition, such as in Down's syndrome individuals and in patients with hereditary cerebral hemorrhage with amyloidosis-Dutch-type (HCHWA-D). While
15 inhibition of β -AP aggregation is a preferred therapeutic method, modulators that promote β -AP aggregation may also be useful therapeutically by allowing for the sequestration of β -AP at sites that do not lead to neurological impairment.

Additionally, abnormal accumulation of β -amyloid precursor protein in muscle fibers has been implicated in the pathology of sporadic inclusion body myositis (IBM) 20 (Askana, V. et al. (1996) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93:1314-1319; Askanas, V. et al. (1995) *Current Opinion in Rheumatology* 7:486-496). Accordingly, the modulators of the invention can be used prophylactically or therapeutically in the treatment of disorders in which β -AP, or APP, is abnormally deposited at non-neurological locations, such as treatment of IBM by delivery of the modulators to muscle fibers.

25 This invention is further illustrated by the following examples which should not be construed as limiting. A modulator's ability to alter the aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptide and/or inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptide in the assays described below are predictive of the modulator's ability to perform the same function *in vivo*.

This invention is further illustrated by the following examples which should not be construed as limiting. The contents of all references, patents and published patent applications cited throughout this application, as well as the Figures, are hereby incorporated by reference.

5

EXAMPLE 1: **Preparation of β -amyloid Modulator Compounds
Comprising D-Amino Acids**

β -amyloid modulators comprising D-amino acids can be prepared by solid-phase peptide synthesis, for example using an N^{α} -9-fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl (FMOC)-based protection strategy as follows. Starting with 2.5 mmoles of FMOC-D-Val-Wang resin, sequential additions of each amino acid are performed using a four-fold excess of protected amino acids, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBt) and diisopropyl carbodiimide (DIC). Recouplings are performed when necessary as determined by ninhydrin testing of the resin after coupling. Each synthesis cycle is minimally described by a three minute deprotection (25 % piperidine/N-methyl-pyrrolidone (NMP)), a 15 minute deprotection, five one minute NMP washes, a 60 minute coupling cycle, five NMP washes and a ninhydrin test. For N-terminal modification, an N-terminal modifying reagent is substituted for an FMOC-D-amino acid and coupled to a 700 mg portion of the fully assembled peptide-resin by the above protocol. The peptide is removed from the resin by treatment with trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) (82.5 %), water (5 %), thioanisole (5 %), phenol (5 %), ethanedithiol (2.5 %) for two hours followed by precipitation of the peptide in cold ether. The solid is pelleted by centrifugation (2400 rpm x 10 min.), and the ether decanted. The solid is resuspended in ether, pelleted and decanted a second time. The solid is dissolved in 10 % acetic acid and lyophilized to dryness. For preparative purification and subsequent analytical characterization, 60 mg of the solid is dissolved in 25 % acetonitrile (ACN) /0.1 % TFA and applied to a C18 reversed phase high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) column.

Alternatively, β -amyloid modulators comprising D-amino acids can be prepared on a Rainin PS3 peptide synthesizer using an automated protocol established by the

manufacturer for a 0.25 mmole scale synthesis. Couplings are performed using 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyl-uronium-hexafluoro-phosphate (HBTU) / FMOC-D-amino acid in four fold excess in 0.4 M N-methylmorpholine (NMM) / dimethylformamide (DMF) for 60 minutes. In between couplings, the FMOC group is 5 removed by reaction with 20% piperidine / DMF for 20 minutes. The peptide is removed from the resin by treatment with 95% TFA/water for one hour and precipitated with ether. The pellet is resuspended in 40% acetonitrile/water and lyophilized. When necessary, the material was purified by preparative HPLC using 15%-50% acetonitrile over 60 minutes on a Vydac C18 column (21 x 250 mm).

10 Various *N*-terminally modified β -amyloid modulator compounds can be synthesized using standard methods. Fully-protected resin-bound peptides are prepared as described above on an appropriate resin to eventually afford carboxyl terminal peptide acids. Small portions of each peptide resin (e.g., 13-20 μ moles) are aliquoted into separate reaction vessels. The *N*-terminal FMOC protecting group of each sample is 15 removed in the standard manner with 20 % piperidine in NMM followed by extensive washing with DMF. The unprotected *N*-terminal α -amino group of each peptide-resin sample can be modified using one of the following methods:

Method A, coupling of modifying reagents containing free carboxylic acid groups: The modifying reagent (five equivalents) is predissolved in NMP, DMSO or a 20 mixture of these two solvents. HOBT and DIC (five equivalents of each reagent) are added to the dissolved modifier and the resulting solution is added to one equivalent of free-amino peptide-resin. Coupling is allowed to proceed overnight, followed by washing. If a ninhydrin test on a small sample of peptide-resin shows that coupling is not complete, the coupling is repeated using 1-hydroxy-7-azabenzotriazole (HOAt) in 25 place of HOBr.

Method B, coupling of modifying reagents obtained in preactivated forms: The modifying reagent (five equivalents) is predissolved in NMP, DMSO or a mixture of these two solvents and added to one equivalent of peptide-resin. Diisopropylethylamine (DIEA; six equivalents) is added to the suspension of activated modifier and peptide- 30 resin. Coupling is allowed to proceed overnight, followed by washing. If a ninhydrin

test on a small sample of peptide-resin shows that coupling is not complete, the coupling is repeated.

After the second coupling (if required) the *N*-terminally modified peptide-resins are dried at reduced pressure and cleaved from the resin with removal of side-chain

5 protecting groups as described above. Analytical reversed-phase HPLC is used to confirm that a major product is present in the resulting crude peptides, which are purified using Millipore Sep-Pak cartridges or preparative reverse-phase HPLC. Mass spectrometry or high-field nuclear magnetic resonance spectrometry is used to confirm the presence of the desired compound in the product.

10 Method C, preparation of *N*-terminal-alkyl substituted peptides using bromoacetyl peptide intermediates: A resin-bound peptide can be coupled to bromoacetic acid (12 equivalents) with 1,3-diisopropylcarbodiimide (DIC) (13 equivalents) in DMF. The resulting bromoacetyl substituted peptide can be modified upon reaction with primary or secondary amines including, methylamine, ethylamine, 15 propylamine, isopropylamine and piperidine. The reaction is performed in 60% DMSO/DMF and is typically complete after 24 hours.

15 Method D, preparation of *N*-terminal-alkyl substituted peptides via reductive alkylation: After the peptide is dissolved (or partially dissolved) in water containing 0-10 % methanol, it is reacted with an aldehyde (5-8 equivalents) and 20 sodiumcyanoborohydride (10-16 equivalents). The number of equivalents can be adjusted for the type of aldehyde and the degree of substitution desired. The pH of the resulting solution is adjusted to 2 with 1 M HCl and maintained at 2 for one hour. The reaction is monitored by hplc and is usually completed with two hours. The reaction mix is concentrated at room temperature and hplc purified.

25 Method E, C-terminal modification: The peptide was synthesized on 2-chlorotriyl resin using standard Fmoc chemistry however the final D-amino acid group coupled was Boc protected. The peptide was removed from the resin with 8/1/1 dichloromethane (DCM) / acetic acid / trifluoroethanol and the mixture concentrated. The peptide residue was dissolved in 20 % acetonitrile, frozen and lyophilized 30 overnight. The crude BOC protected peptide acid was coupled under basic conditions (pH=11, adjusted with DIEA) to an amine with one equivalent each of 1-hydroxy-7-

- 55 -

azobenzotriazole(HOAt) and DIC. The reaction was completed after stirring overnight and the peptide precipitated with water. The BOC group was cleaved upon reaction with 25 % TFA in DCM for one hour and the peptide HPLC purified.

5 **EXAMPLE 2:**

β-Amyloid Aggregation Assays

The ability of β-amyloid modulator compounds to modulate (e.g., inhibit or promote) the aggregation of natural β-AP when combined with the natural β-AP can be examined in one or both of the aggregation assays described below. Natural β-AP (β-AP₁₋₄₀) for use in the aggregation assays is commercially available from Bachem (Torrance, CA).

A. Nucleation Assay

The nucleation assay is employed to determine the ability of test compounds to alter (e.g. inhibit) the early events in formation of β-AP fibers from monomeric β-AP. Characteristic of a nucleated polymerization mechanism, a lag time is observed prior to nucleation, after which the peptide rapidly forms fibers as reflected in a linear rise in turbidity. The time delay before polymerization of β-AP monomer can be quantified as well as the extent of formation of insoluble fiber by light scattering (turbidity).

15 Polymerization reaches equilibrium when the maximum turbidity reaches a plateau. The turbidity of a solution of natural β-AP in the absence or presence of various concentrations of a β-amyloid modulator compound is determined by measuring the apparent absorbance of the solution at 405nm (A_{405 nm}) over time. The threshold of sensitivity for the measurement of turbidity is in the range of 15-20 μM β-AP. A

20 decrease in turbidity over time in the presence of the modulator, as compared to the turbidity in the absence of the modulator, indicates that the modulator inhibits formation of β-AP fibers from monomeric β-AP. This assay can be performed using stirring or shaking to accelerate polymerization, thereby increasing the speed of the assay.

25 Moreover the assay can be adapted to a 96-well plate format to screen multiple

30 compounds.

To perform the nucleation assay, first A β ₁₋₄₀ peptide is dissolved in HFIP (1,1,1,3,3,3-Hexafluoro-2-propanol; Aldrich 10,522-8) at a concentration of 2 mg peptide/ml and incubated at room temperature for 30 min. HFIP-solubilized peptide is sonicated in a waterbath sonicator for 5 min at highest setting, then evaporated to dryness under a stream of argon. The peptide film is resuspended in anhydrous dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) at a concentration of 6.9 mg/ml (25x concentration), sonicated for 5 min as before, then filtered through a 0.2 micron nylon syringe filter (VWR cat. No. 28196-050). Test compounds are dissolved in DMSO at a 100x concentration. Four volumes of 25x A β ₁₋₄₀ peptide in DMSO are combined with one volume of test compound in DMSO in a glass vial, and mixed to produce a 1:1 molar ratio of A β peptide to test compound. For different molar ratios, test compounds are diluted with DMSO prior to addition to A β ₁₋₄₀, in order to keep the final DMSO and A β ₁₋₄₀ concentrations constant. Control samples do not contain the test compound. Ten microliters of the mixture is then added to the bottom of a well of a Corning Costar ultra low binding 96-well plate (Corning Costar, Cambridge MA; cat. No. 2500). Ninety microliters of water is added to the well, the plate is shaken on a rotary shaker at a constant speed at room temperature for 30 seconds, an additional 100 μ l of 2x PTL buffer (20 mM NaH₂PO₄, 300 mM NaCl, pH 7.4) is added to the well, the plate is reshaken for 30 seconds and a baseline (t=0) turbidity reading is taken by measuring the apparent absorbance at 405 nm using a Bio-Rad Model 450 Microplate Reader. The plate is then returned to the shaker and shaken continuously for 5 hours. Turbidity readings are taken at 15 minute intervals.

β -amyloid aggregation in the absence of any modulators results in enhanced turbidity of the natural β -AP solution (*i.e.*, an increase in the apparent absorbance at 405 nm over time). Accordingly, a solution including an effective inhibitory modulator compound exhibits reduced turbidity as compared to the control sample without the modulator compound (*i.e.*, less apparent absorbance at 405 nm over time as compared to the control sample).

Alternative to use of turbidity to quantitate β -amyloid aggregation, fluorescence of thioflavin T (Th-T) also can be used to quantitate β -amyloid aggregation in the nucleation assay (use of Th-T fluorescence for quantitating β -amyloid aggregation is described further below for the seeded extension assay).

5

B. Fibril Binding Assay

The following materials are needed for the Fibril binding assay: Millipore multifilter apparatus; 12 x 75 glass tubes; GF/F 25 mm glass filters; PBS/0.1% tween 20 at 4°C (PBST); A β fibrils; radioactive compound; nonradioactive compound; Eppendorf 10 repeat pipettor with tips; labels; forceps; and vacuum.

In this assay, each sample is run in triplicate. The "aged" A β fibril is first prepared approximately 8 days in advance by aging 1 ml aliquots of a 200 μ M A β 1-40 peptide solution in 4%DMSO/PBS for 8 days at 37°C with rocking. Such "aged" A β peptide can be tested directly on cells or frozen at -80°C.

15 The 200 μ M A β fibril is diluted in PBST to yield a 4 μ M solution (320 μ l in 16 ml PBST). 100 μ L aliquots of this solution are added per tube with the repeat pipettor.

The β -amyloid modulator compounds of the invention are prepared at 2 μ M – 200 fM dilutions as follows:

Dilute a 5 mM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 1.6667 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

20 Dilute a 1.667 mM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 0.5556 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 555.556 μ M stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 185.19 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

25 Dilute a 185.185 μ M stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 61.728 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 61.728 μ M stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 20.576 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 20.576 μ M stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 6.8587 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

- 58 -

Dilute a 6.859 μ M stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 2.2862 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 2.286 μ M stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 0.7621 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

10 Dilute a 762.079 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 254.03 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

5 Dilute a 254.026 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 84.675 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 84.675 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 28.225 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 28.225 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 9.4084 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l

10 DMSO).

Dilute a 9.408 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 3.1361 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

15 Dilute a 3.136 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 1.0454 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 1.045 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 0.3485 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

15 Dilute a 348.459 pM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 116.15 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 116.153 pM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 38.718 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute 185.185 μ M stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 7.4074 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

20 Dilute 61.728 μ M stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 2.4691 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 20.576 μ M stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 0.823 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 6.859 μ M stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 0.2743 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 2.286 μ M stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 0.0914 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 762.079 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 30.483 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

25 Dilute 254.026 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 10.161 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 84.675 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 3.387 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 28.225 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 1.129 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 9.408 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 0.3763 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 3.136 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 0.1254 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

30 Dilute 1.045 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 0.0418 (50 µL in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 348.459 pM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 13.938 (50 µL in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 116.153 pM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 4.6461 (50 µL in 1.2 mL PBST)

The β-amyloid modulator compound (200µL) is then added to the appropriate
5 tube containing the Aβ fibril.

The radioactively labeled β-amyloid modulator compound is prepared using
standard radioactive safety protocols by making a dilution into a PBS/0.1% tween-20
solution such that there is a final concentration of 20,000 dpm per 100 µL. 100
µl aliquots of the radioactively labeled β-amyloid modulator compound are added per
10 tube using the repeat pipettor. The samples are covered with parafilm and incubated at
37 °C inside plastic radioactivity bags overnight.

To filter the samples, the filters are pre-wetted in a small volume of PBST.
Two Millipore multifiltration apparati are set with GF/F filters in each filtration slot
following the instructions from the manufacturer. The samples are removed from the 37
15 °C incubator and each sample is filtered using a small volume (~5 ml) of cold PBST
buffer. The sample tube is then washed with two additional 5 mL volumes of cold
PBST buffer. The vacuum is allowed to pull to a semi dry filter for approximately 2
minutes after adding the last sample and the filter is transferred to a labelled tube for
iodination counting. One minute counts are recorded, the data is plotted, and the Prism
20 program (GraphPAD) is used to analyze the graph, according to the manufacturer's
instructions.

C. Seeded Extension Assay

The seeded extension assay can be employed to measure the rate of Aβ fiber
25 formed in a solution of Aβ monomer following addition of polymeric Aβ fiber "seed".

The ability of test compounds to prevent further deposition of monomeric Aβ to
previously deposited amyloid is determined using a direct indicator of β-sheet formation
using fluorescence. In contrast with the nucleation assay, the addition of seed provides
immediate nucleation and continued growth of preformed fibrils without the need for
30 continuous mixing, and thus results in the absence of a lag time before polymerization

starts. Since this assay uses static polymerization conditions, the activity of positive compounds in the nucleation assay can be confirmed in this second assay under different conditions and with an additional probe of amyloid structure.

In the seeded extension assay, monomeric A β ₁₋₄₀ is incubated in the presence of 5 a "seed" nucleus (approximately ten mole percent of A β that has been previously allowed to polymerize under controlled static conditions). Samples of the solution are then diluted in thioflavin T (Th-T). The polymer-specific association of Th-T with A β produces a fluorescent complex that allows the measurement of the extent of fibril formation (Levine, H. (1993) *Protein Science* 2:404-410). In particular, association of 10 Th-T with aggregated β -AP, but not monomeric or loosely associated β -AP, gives rise to a new excitation (ex) maximum at 450 nm and an enhanced emission (em) at 482 nm, compared to the 385 nm (ex) and 445 nm (em) for the free dye. Small aliquots of the polymerization mixture contain sufficient fibril to be mixed with Th-T to allow the monitoring of the reaction mixture by repeated sampling. A linear growth curve is 15 observed in the presence of excess monomer. The formation of thioflavin T responsive β -sheet fibrils parallels the increase in turbidity observed using the nucleation assay.

A solution of A β monomer for use in the seeded extension assay is prepared by 20 dissolving an appropriate quantity of A β ₁₋₄₀ peptide in 1/25 volume of dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO), followed by water to 1/2 volume and 1/2 volume 2x PBS (10x PBS: NaCl 137 mM, KCl 2.7 mM Na₂HPO₄ • 7H₂O 4.3 mM, KH₂PO₄ 1.4 mM pH 7.2) to a final concentration of 200 μ M. To prepare the stock seed, 1 ml of the A β monomer preparation, is incubated for approximately 8 days at 37 °C and sheared sequentially through an 18, 23, 26 and 30 gauge needle 25, 25, 50, and 100 times respectively. 2 μ l samples of the sheared material is taken for fluorescence 25 measurements after every 50 passes through the 30 gauge needle until the fluorescence units (FU) plateau (approx. 100-150x). Test compounds are prepared by dissolving an appropriate amount of test compound in 1x PBS to a final concentration of 1 mM (10x stock). If insoluble, the compound is dissolved in 1/10 volume of DMSO and diluted in 1x PBS to 1 mM. A further 1/10 dilution is also prepared to test each candidate at both 30 100 μ M and 10 μ M.

To perform the seeded extension assay, each sample is set up with 50 μ l of 200 μ M monomer, 125 FU sheared seed (a variable quantity dependent on the batch of seed, routinely 3-6 μ l) and 10 μ l of 10x modulator solution. The sample volume is then adjusted to a final volume of 100 μ l with 1x PBS. Two concentrations of each

5 modulator typically are tested: 100 μ M and 10 μ M, equivalent to a 1:1 and a 1:10 molar ratio of monomer to modulator. The controls include an unseeded reaction to confirm that the fresh monomer contains no seed, and a seeded reaction in the absence of any modulators, as a reference to compare against candidate modulators. The assay is incubated at 37 °C for 6 h, taking 2 μ l samples hourly for fluorescence measurements.

10 To measure fluorescence, a 2 μ l sample of A β is added to 400 μ l of Thioflavin-T solution (50 mM Potassium Phosphate 10 mM Thioflavin-T pH 7.5). The samples are vortexed and the fluorescence is read in a 0.5 ml micro quartz cuvette at EX 450 nm and EM 482 nm (Hitachi 4500 Fluorimeter).

β -amyloid aggregation results in enhanced emission of Thioflavin-T.

15 Accordingly, samples including an effective inhibitory modulator compound exhibit reduced emission as compared to control samples without the modulator compound.

EXAMPLE 3:**Analysis of β -Amyloid Modulator Compounds**

20 In this example, β -amyloid modulator compounds described herein were prepared and tested for their ability to inhibit aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptide using aggregations assays as described in Example 2. The results from a first series of experiments, are summarized below in Tables I, II, and III.

TABLE I

PPI#	Nucleation assay Δ lag			Fibril binding Kd's		
	5 μM	2.5 μM	1.25 μM	cmpd	ref cmpd	ref Kd
803	<1	<1	<1			
913	1	1	1			
968	>5	>5	2			
969	>5	>5	3	1.13 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	3.7 x 10 ⁻⁹
970	>5	>5	1			
992	3	1	1	2.43 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	3.70 x 10 ⁻⁹
993	1	1	1			
1005	3	3	1			
1006	1	1	1			
*1007	4	4	3	8.64 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	1.69 x 10 ⁻⁹
#1007	1.5	1.5	1.5	6.27 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	2.75 x 10 ⁻⁹
1008				1.75 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	1.00 x 10 ⁻⁹
#1013	2	>3	2	2.47 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	1.69 x 10 ⁻⁹
1017				3.89 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	2.42 x 10 ⁻⁹
1018				7.01 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	2.42 x 10 ⁻⁹
1020				6.01 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	2.42 x 10 ⁻⁹
1022				1.50 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	1.00 x 10 ⁻⁹
1025				4.30 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	1.00 x 10 ⁻⁹
1028				4.90 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	1.00 x 10 ⁻⁹
1038				6.52 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	3.76 x 10 ⁻⁹
1039				2.44 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	3.76 x 10 ⁻⁹
1040				4.08 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	2.4 x 10 ⁻⁹
1041				1.61 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	2.4 x 10 ⁻⁹
1042				2.34 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	2.4 x 10 ⁻⁹
1088				3.40 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	1.93 x 10 ⁻⁹

- 63 -

1089				5.7×10^{-10}	PPI-558	3.3×10^{-9}
1093				1.02×10^{-9}	PPI-558	1.93×10^{-9}
1094				3.7×10^{-9}	PPI-558	3.5×10^{-9}
1179				6.04×10^{-10}	PPI-558	1.93×10^{-9}
1180				3.3×10^{-10}	PPI-558	3.5×10^{-9}
1261				1.12×10^{-8}	PPI-558	3.34×10^{-9}

Notes:

* means nucleation assay data was measured at 3, 1 and 0.3 μ M of compound# means nucleation assay data was measured at 2.5, 1.25 and 0.6 μ M of compound

5 TABLE II

PPI#	Nucleation assay data			Fibril binding Kd's		
	3 μ M	1 μ M	0.3 μ M	cmpd	ref cmpd	ref Kd
*1019	>2.5	>2.5	2.0	4.11×10^{-10}	PPI-558	1.69×10^{-9}
1019				5.34×10^{-10}	PPI-558	1.93×10^{-9}
1301				1.1×10^{-9}	PPI-1318	1.4×10^{-9}
1302				2.2×10^{-10}	PPI-1318	1.4×10^{-9}
1303				1.1×10^{-9}	PPI-1318	1.4×10^{-9}
1318	>5	2	1	7.7×10^{-11}	PPI-558	2.3×10^{-9}
1318				1.4×10^{-9}		
1318				6.2×10^{-11}		
1319	>5	>5	1			
1320	>5	3	1	1.4×10^{-9}	PPI-1318	6.2×10^{-11}
1321	<1	<1	<1			
1322				1.2×10^{-9}	PPI-1318	6.2×10^{-11}
1323						
1324						
1325				1.4×10^{-9}	PPI-1318	1.4×10^{-9}

- 64 -

1326				5.6×10^{-10}	PPI-1318	6.2×10^{-11}
1327				8.2×10^{-10}	PPI-1318	1.4×10^{-9}
1328				2.4×10^{-9}	PPI-1318	6.2×10^{-11}
1329						
*1125	>2.5	>2.5	2.0	1.27×10^{-9}	PPI-558	2.08×10^{-9}
1125				1.34×10^{-9}	PPI-558	5.05×10^{-9}
1133				3.18×10^{-7}	PPI-558	2.08×10^{-9}
1155				1.24×10^{-7}	PPI-558	2.08×10^{-9}

Notes:

* means nucleation assay data was measured at 2.5, 1.25 and 0.6 μ M of compound

The modulator compounds were evaluated in nucleation assays utilizing 5 μ M A β ₁₋₄₀ and either 5 μ M, 2.5 μ M, 1.25 μ M, 3 μ M, 1 μ M, or 0.3 μ M test compound. The change in lag time (Δ Lag) is presented as the ratio of the lag time observed in the presence of the test compound (at either 5 μ M, 2.5 μ M, 1.25 μ M, 3 μ M, 1 μ M, or 0.3 μ M) to the lag time of the control.

10 TABLE III

PPI #	STRUCTURE	Fibril binding Kd's cmpd
PPI-504	TFA • H-(lv-[3-I]y-fa)-NH ₂	
PPI-1181	TFA • H-(lvffl)-NH-Et	
PPI-1465	TFA • H-lvffl-NH-CH ₂ CH ₂ -NH ₂	3.6×10^{-9}
PPI-1603	TFA • H-(GGClvffl)-NH ₂	
PPI-1604	TFA • H-(GGClvfyl)-NH ₂	
PPI-1605	TFA • H-(GGClvf-[3-I]y-l)-NH ₂	
PPI-1619	2TFA • H-LVF-NH-NH-FVL-H	3.5×10^{-8} (an analog of 1125)

- 65 -

PPI-1621	2TFA • H-LVF-NH-NH-fvl-H	8.7×10^{-9} (an analog of 1125)
PPI-1635	TFA • H-lff-(nvl)-l-NH ₂	1.4×10^{-9}
PPI-1636	TFA • H-lf-[pF]f-(nvl)-l-NH ₂	1.5×10^{-9}
PPI-1637	TFA • H-l-[pF]f-[pF]f-(nvl)-l-NH ₂	1.8×10^{-9}
PPI-1782	TFA•Me-lvyfl-NH ₂	
PPI-1783	TFA•H-(lvyfl)-NH ₂	
PPI-1784	TFA• Me-(lv-[p-F]f-fl)-NH ₂	2.5×10^{-9}
PPI-1785	TFA•H-(lv-[p-F]f-fl)-NH ₂	2.8×10^{-9}
PPI-1786	TFA•H-(lvf-[p-F]f-l)-NH ₂	
PPI-1787	TFA•Me-lvff-[nvl]-NH ₂	5.8×10^{-9}
PPI-1788	TFA• Me-(lvff-[nle])-NH ₂	(~4 x 10 ⁻⁹) 3-point assay
PPI-1799	TFA•Me-lvffl)-OH	
PPI-1800	TFA• Me-(lvffl)-NH-OH	(~4 x 10 ⁻⁹) 3-point assay
PPI-1805	TFA • H-(lv-[p-F]f-f-(nvl))-NH ₂	
PPI-1806	TFA • Me-(l-v-[p-F]f-f-(nvl))-NH ₂	
PPI 1807	TFA • H-((nvl)-v-[p-F]f-f-nvl)-NH ₂	
PPI-1818	TFA • H-(l-(nvl)-[p-F]f-f-(nvl))-NH ₂	
PPI 1819	TFA • H-((nvl)-(nvl)-[p-F]f-f-(nvl))-NH ₂	
PPI 1820	TFA • Me-(l-(nvl)-[p-F]f-f-(nvl))-NH ₂	
PPI 1827	TFA • H-(lvff-(nvl))-NH ₂	
PPI 1828	Ac-(lvffl)-NH ₂	
PPI 1829	Ac-(lvffl)-OH	
PPI 1830	TFA • H-(lv-[3-I]y-fl)-NH ₂	

- 66 -

(nvl) = D-norvaline

(nle) = D-norleucine

[3-I]y = 3-iodo-D-tyrosine

[p-F]f = para-fluoro-D-phenylalanine

5

PPI-1801 is the acetyl amide analog of H-LPFFD-OH that has been reported in the literature. This compound was prepared and tested for activity for comparison purposes. The results indicate that this compound binds poorly to fibrils in the assay used herein.

10

In contrast, the results shown in Tables I, II, and III, and Figure 2 demonstrate that β -amyloid modulators of the invention are effective inhibitors of $A\beta$ aggregation.

EXAMPLE 6:

Neurotoxicity Assay

15

The neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptide aggregates, in either the presence or absence of a β -amyloid modulator, can be tested in a cell-based assay using either a rat or human neuronally-derived cell line (PC-12 cells or NT-2 cells, respectively) and the viability indicator 3,(4,4-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)2,5-diphenyl-tetrazolium bromide (MTT). (See *e.g.*, Shearman, M.S. *et al.* (1994) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **91**:1470-1474; Hansen, M.B. *et al.* (1989) *J. Immun. Methods* **119**:203-210 for a description of similar cell-based viability assays). PC-12 is a rat adrenal pheochromocytoma cell line and is available from the American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, MD (ATCC CRL 1721). MTT (commercially available from Sigma Chemical Co.) is a chromogenic substrate that is converted from yellow to blue in viable cells, which can be detected spectrophotometrically.

To test the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides, stock solutions of fresh $A\beta$ monomers and aged $A\beta$ aggregates are first prepared. $A\beta_{1-40}$ in 100% DMSO is prepared from lyophilized powder and immediately diluted in one half the final volume in H_2O and then one half the final volume in 2X PBS so that a final concentration of 200 μ M peptide, 4% DMSO is achieved. Peptide prepared in this way and tested

immediately on cells is referred to as "fresh" A β monomer. To prepare "aged" A β aggregates, peptide solution is placed in a 1.5 ml Eppendorf tube and incubated at 37 °C for eight days to allow fibrils to form. Such "aged" A β peptide can be tested directly on cells or frozen at -80°C. The neurotoxicity of fresh monomers and aged aggregates are

5 tested using PC12 and NT2 cells. PC12 cells are routinely cultured in Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium (DMEM) containing 10% horse serum, 5% fetal calf serum, 4mM glutamine, and 1% gentamycin. NT2 cells are routinely cultured in OPTI-MEM medium (GIBCO BRL CAT. #31985) supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum, 2 mM glutamine and 1% gentamycin. Cells are plated at 10-15,000 cells per well in 90 μ l of

10 fresh medium in a 96 -well tissue culture plate 3-4 hours prior to treatment. The fresh or aged A β peptide solutions (10 μ L) are then diluted 1:10 directly into tissue culture medium so that the final concentration is in the range of 1-10 μ M peptide. Cells are incubated in the presence of peptide without a change in media for 48 hours at 37°C.

15 For the final three hours of exposure of the cells to the β -AP preparation, MTT is added to the media to a final concentration of 1 mg/ml and incubation is continued at 37 °C. Following the two hour incubation with MTT, the media is removed and the cells are lysed in 100 μ L isopropanol/0.4N HCl with agitation. An equal volume of PBS is added to each well and the plates are agitated for an additional 10 minutes. Absorbance of each well at 570 nm is measured using a microtiter plate reader to quantitate viable cell.

20 Using this assay, the neurotoxicity of aged (5 day or 8 day) A β ₁₋₄₀ aggregates alone, but not fresh A β ₁₋₄₀ monomers alone, was confirmed. Experiments demonstrated that incubating the neuronal cells with increasing amounts of fresh A β ₁₋₄₀ monomers was not significantly toxic to the cells whereas incubating the cells with increasing amounts of 5 day or 8 day A β ₁₋₄₀ aggregates led to increasing amount of neurotoxicity.

25 The EC₅₀ for toxicity of aged A β ₁₋₄₀ aggregates was 1-2 μ M for both the PC12 cells and the NT2 cells.

30 To determine the effect of a β -amyloid modulator compound on the neurotoxicity of A β ₁₋₄₀ aggregates, a modulator compound is preincubated with A β ₁₋₄₀ monomers under standard nucleation assay conditions as described in Example 2 and at particular time intervals post-incubation, aliquots of the β -AP/modulator solution are

- 68 -

removed and 1) the turbidity of the solution is assessed as a measure of aggregation and 2) the solution is applied to cultured neuronal cells for 48 hours at which time cell viability is assessed using MTT to determine the neurotoxicity of the solution.

Additionally, the ability of β -amyloid modulator compounds to reduce the neurotoxicity 5 of preformed $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ aggregates can be assayed. In these experiments, $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ aggregates are preformed by incubation of the monomers in the absence of any modulators. The modulator compound is then incubated with the preformed $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ aggregates for 24 hours at 37 °C, after which time the β -AP/modulator solution is collected and its neurotoxicity evaluated as described above.

10

EXAMPLE 7: Assay of Modulator Compound Stability in Cerebrospinal Fluid

The stability of a modulator compound in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) can be 15 assayed in an *in vitro* assay as follows. A CSF solution is prepared containing 75% Rhesus monkey CSF (commercially available from Northern Biomedical Research), 23% sterile phosphate buffered saline and 2% dimethylsulfoxide (v/v) (Aldrich Chemical Co., Catalog No. 27,685-5). Test modulator compounds are added to the CSF solution to a final concentration of 40 μM or 15 μM . All sample handling is carried out 20 in a laminar flow hood and test solutions are maintained at 37 °C during the assay. After 24 hours, enzymatic activity in the solutions is quenched by adding acetonitrile to produce a final concentration of 25% (v/v). Samples (at the 0 time point and the 24 hour time point) are analyzed at room temperature using reverse-phase HPLC. A microbore column is used to maximize sensitivity. The parameters for analytical HPLC are as 25 follows:

Solvent System

A: 0.1% Trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) in water (v/v)

B: 0.085% TFA/Acetonitrile, 1% H_2O (v/v)

30

Injection and Gradient

Inject: 100-250 μ L of test sample

Run: 10% for B for 5 min., then 10-70% B over 60 min.

5 Chromatographic analysis is performed using a Hewlett Packard 1090 series II HPLC. The column used for separation is a C4, 5 μ m, 1 x 250 mm (Vydac #214TP51). The flow rate is 50 μ L/min and the elution profile of the test compounds is monitored at 214, 230, 260 and 280 nm.

10 **EXAMPLE 8:** **Brain Uptake Assay**

Brain levels of our A β -derived peptides were determined in the rat following intravenous administration. Under ketamine/xylazine anesthesia male Sprague-Dawley rats (219-302g) received an intravenous injection via a catheter inserted in the left jugular vein (dose volume of 4 mL/kg administered over 1 minute) The actual dose administered of each compound tested is shown in Figure 1.

15 At 60 minutes post administration the left common carotid artery was cannulated to enable perfusion of the left forebrain to remove cerebral blood. The left forebrain, void of blood was subjected to capillary depletion as described by (Triguero et al. (1990) 20 *J. Neurochem.* 54:1882-1888). This established technique separates brain vasculature from the parenchyma and, thus, allows the accurate determination of the concentration of compound under investigation that has traversed the blood brain barrier. The amount of parent compound that was present within the brain was determined by LC/MS/MS.

25 The above-described assay was used to measure the brain uptake of the following modulators:

Compounds				Dose	
PPI	Structure	mwt	Conc (mg/mL)	mg/kg	IV
1324	TFA. H-(l-[F ₅]f-vl)-NH ₂	841	1.20	4.9	
1318	TFA. H-(lf-D-Cha-vl)-NH ₂	757	0.29	1.0	
1319	TFA. H-(lf-[p-F]f-vl)-NH ₂	769	1.70	6.6	
1327	TFA. H-(l-[p-F]f-[p-F]f-vl)-NH ₂	787	0.98	4.0	
1301	TFA. H-(lvf-D-Cha-l)-NH ₂	757	0.70	2.9	
1302	TFA. H-(lvf-[p-F]f-l)-NH ₂	769	0.19	0.7	
1328	TFA. H-(l-[F ₅]f-[F ₅]f-vl)-NH ₂	931	0.29	1.2	
1322	TFA. H-(l-D-Cha-fvl)-NH ₂	757	0.03	0.1	
1303	TFA. H-(lvf-[F ₅]f-l)-NH ₂	841	0.27	1.0	
1326	TFA. H-(l-D-Cha-D-Cha-vl)-NH ₂	763	0.05	0.2	
1320	TFA. H-(lf-[F ₅]f-vl)-NH ₂	841	0.70	3.0	

*The lower letter notation refers to a D-configuration.

The results are summarized in Figure 1.

5 The β -amyloid modulator compounds described herein are summarized in the following Table.

TABLE IV

PPI#	Description	SEQ ID NO
803	TFA•N,N-dimethyl-(Gaffvl)-NH ₂	
913	TFA•N,N-dimethyl-(affvl)-NH ₂	
918	TFA•H-(l-[Me]v-ffa)-NH ₂	
968	TFA•N-methyl-(Gaffvl)-NH ₂	
969	TFA•N-ethyl-(Gaffvl)-NH ₂	
970	TFA•N-isopropyl-(Gaffvl)-NH ₂	
992	TFA•H-(lvffa)-isopropylamide	
993	TFA•H-(lvffa)-dimethylamide	
1005	TFA•N,N-diethyl-(Gaffvl)-NH ₂	
1006	TFA•N,N-diethyl-(affvl)-NH ₂	
1007	TFA•N,N-dimethyl-(lvffl)-NH ₂	
1008	TFA•N,N-dimethyl-(lffvl)-NH ₂	
1013	TFA•H-(Glvffl)-NH ₂	
1017	TFA•N-ethyl-(Glvffl)-NH ₂	
1018	TFA•N-ethyl-(Glffvl)-NH ₂	
1020	TFA•N-methyl-(lffvl)-NH ₂	
1022	TFA•N-ethyl-(lvffl)-NH ₂	
1025	TFA•N-propyl-(lvffl)-NH ₂	
1028	TFA•N,N-diethyl-(Glvffl)-NH ₂	
1038	TFA•H-(ivffi)-NH ₂	
1039	TFA•H-(ivffa)-NH ₂	
1040	TFA•H-(iiffi)-NH ₂	
1041	TFA•H-(D-Nle-vffa)-NH ₂	
1042	TFA•H-(D-Nle-vff- D-Nle)-NH ₂	
1088	TFA•1-piperidine-acetyl-(lvffl)-NH ₂	
1089	TFA•1-piperidine-acetyl-(lffvl)-NH ₂	
1093	TFA•H-lvffl-isopropylamide	

- 72 -

1094	TFA•H-lffvl-isopropylamide	
1179	TFA•H-(lvffl)-methylamide	
1180	TFA•H-(lffvl)-methylamide	
1261	TFA•H-(lvffl)-OH	
1019	TFA•N-methyl-(lvffl)-NH ₂	
1301	TFA•H-(lvf-D-Cha-l)-NH ₂	
1302	TFA•H-(lvf-[p-F]f-l)-NH ₂	
1303	TFA•H-(lvf-[F ₅]f-l)-NH ₂	
1306	N-methyl-(lvf-D-Cha-l)-NH ₂	
1307	N-methyl-(lvf-[p-F]f-l)-NH ₂	
1308	N-methyl-(lvf-[F ₅]f-l)-NH ₂	
1318	TFA•H-(lf-D-Cha-vl)-NH ₂	
1319	TFA•H-(lf-[p-F]f-vl)-NH ₂	
1320	TFA•H-(lf-[F ₅]f-vl)-NH ₂	
1321	2TFA•H-(lfkvl)-NH ₂	
1322	TFA•H-(l-D-Cha-fvl)-NH ₂	
1323	TFA•H-(l-[p-F]f-fvl)-NH ₂	
1324	TFA•H-(l-[F ₅]f-fvl)-NH ₂	
1325	2TFA•H-(lkkvl)-NH ₂	
1326	TFA•H-(l-D-Cha-D-Cha-vl)-NH ₂	
1327	TFA•H-(l-[p-F]f-[p-F]f-vl)-NH ₂	
1328	TFA•H-(l-[F ₅]f-[F ₅]f-vl)-NH ₂	
1329	3 TFA•H-(lkkvl)-NH ₂	
1125	2 TFA•H-lvf-NH-NH-fvl-H	
1133	TFA•H-lvf-NH-NH-Acetyl	
1155	TFA•H-lvf-NH-NH ₂	

EQUIVALENTS

Those skilled in the art will recognize, or be able to ascertain using no more than routine experimentation, many equivalents to the specific embodiments of the invention

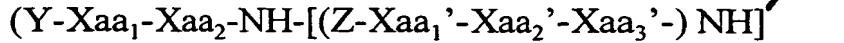
- 73 -

described herein. Such equivalents are intended to be encompassed by the following claims.

We claim:

1. A compound comprising the structure:

5



wherein Xaa_1 and Xaa_2 are each D-amino acid structures and at least two of Xaa_1 and Xaa_2 are, independently, selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, 10 a D-lysine structure, or a D-valine structure;

$NH-NH$ is a hydrazine structure;

Y , which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula $(Xaa)_a$, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and a is an integer from 1 to 15;

Xaa_1' , Xaa_2' , and Xaa_3' which may or may not be present, are each D- 15 amino acid or L-amino acid structures and at least two of Xaa_1' , Xaa_2' , and Xaa_3' are, independently, selected from the group consisting of a D- or L-leucine structure, a D- or L-phenylalanine structure, a D- or L-tyrosine structure, a D- or L-iodotyrosine structure, a D- or L-lysine structure, or a D- or L-valine structure;

Z , which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula 20 $(Xaa)_b$, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and b is an integer from 1 to 15;

A , which may or may not be present, is a modifying group attached directly or indirectly to the compound; and

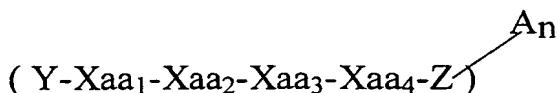
n is an integer from 1 to 15;

wherein Xaa_1 , Xaa_2 , Xaa_1' , Xaa_2' , Xaa_3' , Y , Z , A and n are selected such that 25 the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides, and is less prone to metabolism.

- 75 -

2. A compound having a structure selected from the group consisting of: H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-(H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-)NH; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH-COCH₃; and H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH₂.

5 3. A compound comprising the structure:



wherein Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃ and Xaa₄ are each D-amino acid structures and at least 10 two of Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃ and Xaa₄ are, independently, selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-cyclohexylalanine, a D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), a D-pentafluorophenylalanine, a chlorophenylalanine, a bromophenylalanine, a nitrophenylalanine, a D-homophenylalanine, a D-lysine structure, and a D-valine structure;

15 Y, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_a, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and a is an integer from 1 to 15;

Z, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_b, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and b is an integer from 1 to 15;

20 A, which may or may not be present, is a modifying group attached directly or indirectly to the compound; and

n is an integer from 1 to 15;

wherein Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃, Xaa₄, Y, Z, A and n are selected such that the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides, and is less prone to metabolism.

4. A compound having a structure selected from the group consisting of:

N,N-dimethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-isopropyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂;

5 D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-isopropylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-dimethylamide; N,N-diethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-diethyl-(D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-10 Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-propyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-diethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Val-D-Phe-D-15 Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Ile-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂; H-(D-Nle-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-NH₂; H-(D-Nle-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Nle)-NH₂; 1-piperidine-acetyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; 1-piperidine-acetyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu-isopropylamide; H-D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu-isopropylamide;

20 H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-methylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-methylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-OH; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Val-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-25 Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Lys-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Cha-D-30 Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-

- 77 -

D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-(H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe)-NH; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH-COCH₃; and H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH₂.

5 5. A compound having the structure: H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-[*p*-F]D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂.

6. A compound having the structure: N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂

10 7. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of the compound of any of claims 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

15 8. A method for inhibiting aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptides, comprising contacting the natural β -amyloid peptides with the compound of any of claims 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 such that aggregation of the natural β -amyloid peptides is inhibited.

20 9. A method for detecting the presence or absence of natural β -amyloid peptides in a biological sample, comprising:

contacting a biological sample with the compound of any of claims 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, wherein the compound is labeled with a detectable substance; and

25 detecting the compound bound to natural β -amyloid peptides to thereby detect the presence or absence of natural β -amyloid peptides in the biological sample.

10. The method of claim 9, wherein the β -amyloid modulator compound and the biological sample are contacted *in vitro*.

11. The method of claim 9, wherein the β -amyloid modulator compound is contacted with the biological sample by administering the β -amyloid modulator compound to a subject.

5 12. The method of claim 9, wherein the compound is labeled with radioactive technetium or radioactive iodine.

13. A method for treating a subject for a disorder associated with β -amyloidosis, comprising:

10 administering to the subject a therapeutically effective amount of the compound of any of claims 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 such that the subject is treated for a disorder associated with β -amyloidosis.

14. The method of claim 13, wherein the disorder is Alzheimer's disease.

15

1/2

~~DISCONTINUED INVESTIGATIONAL DRUGS~~
BRAIN LEVELS 1 HOUR POSTIVE (min. IV)

All tested at max solubility in 5% ethanol, pH 4 (except PPI-658=CMPC)
 Brain levels determined via LC/MS/MS (0.2 mL; PPI-657=0.5, except PPI-658 2 mL, SepPak)

PPI	CsA (mM)	Chemical	min	MAX SOLUBILITY		Brain Levels (min) + CsA min	min	UNIT DOSE (2 mg/kg IV)	
				Conc (mM)	Dose mg/kg IV			ALONE	(+)CsA (mM)
658	67	1-(4-F-4- 4-(4-methylpiperazine-1-yl)-1- H-1,2,4-oxadiazol-5-yl)-1- H-1,2,4-oxadiazol-5-yl	704	0.8	3.3	3.3	1.4	24	7
658	75	TFA. 1-(4-F-4- 4-(4-methylpiperazine-1-yl)-1- H-1,2,4-oxadiazol-5-yl)-1- H-1,2,4-oxadiazol-5-yl	704	1.0	4.6	3.8, 2.6, 17.3	7.9	50	3
1019	70	TFA. 1-(4-methylpiperazine-1- yl)-1-H-1,2,4-oxadiazol-5-yl	704	0.8	3.4	6.6, 7.1, 8.0	7.2	29	2
678	75	TFA. 1-(4-F-4- 4-(4-methylpiperazine-1-yl)-1- H-1,2,4-oxadiazol-5-yl)-1- H-1,2,4-oxadiazol-5-yl	704	1.6	7.0	11.6, 8.7, 8.4	7.6	57	8
1330	77	TFA. H-(1-{F ₃ Y-V})-NH ₂	641	0.7	3.0	4.0, 6.7, 6.3	5.3	16	2
1334	77	TFA. H-(1-{F ₃ Y-V})-NH ₂	641	1.2	4.9	1.9, 2.3, 8.2	4.1	23	6
1316	77	TFA. H-(1-{cha}-V)-NH ₂	707	0.3	1.0	3.1, 2.8, 1.5	2.5	3	1
1319	77	TFA. H-(1-(p-F)-(p-F)-V)-NH ₂	707	1.7	6.6	28.4, 67.2, 11.2	34.9	20	5
1337	77	TFA. H-(1-(p-F)-(p-F)-V)-NH ₂	707	1.0	4.0	4.8, 5.6, 6.4	5.3	20	1
1301	77	TFA. H-(1{V-cha}-V)-NH ₂	707	0.7	2.9	3.5, 3.7, 2.8	3.3	11	1
1302	77	TFA. H-(1{V-(p-F)}-V)-NH ₂	707	0.2	0.7	2.6, 0.3, 1.2	1.3	4	1
1320	77	TFA. H-(1{F ₃ Y-V})-NH ₂	621	0.3	1.2	1.1, 0.7, 1.4	1.0	7	1
1322	77	TFA. H-(1{V-cha}-V)-NH ₂	707	0.03	0.1	0.2, 0.1, 0.3	0.2	1	1
1303	77	TFA. H-(1{V-(F ₃ Y-V)})-NH ₂	641	0.3	1.0	0.6, 0.6, 1.3	0.8	4	1
1338	77	TFA. H-(1-{cha}-{cha}-V)-NH ₂	703	0.05	0.2	0.6, 1.0, 1.0	0.9	2	2

* Computed values from do area < 100

FIGURE 1

2/2

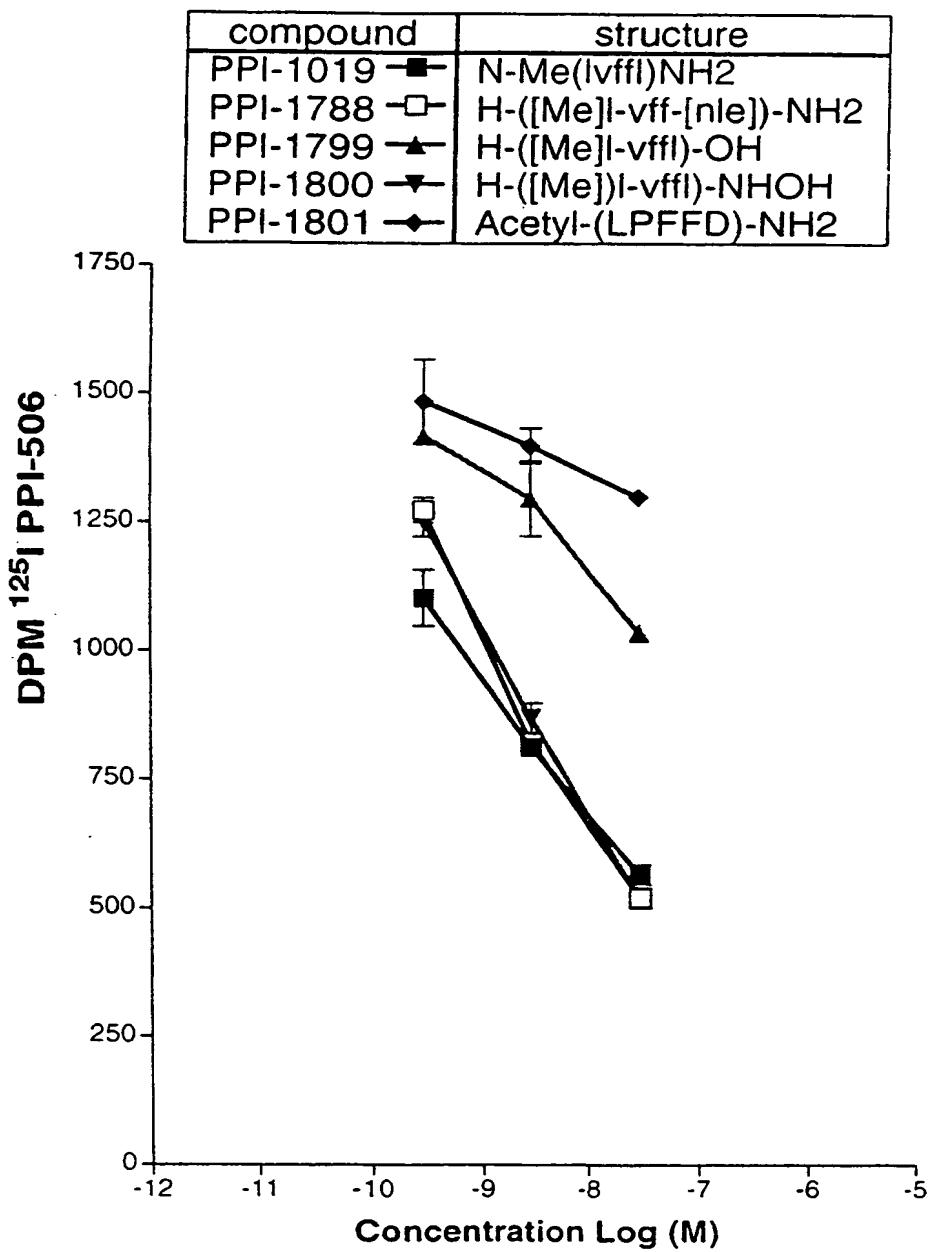


FIGURE 2

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/US 00/05574

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 7 C07K14/47 A61K

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 7 C07K14/47 A61K38/17 G01N33/68 A61P25/28

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC 7 C07K A61K G01N

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

CHEM ABS Data, WPI Data, PAJ, BIOSIS, MEDLINE, EPO-Internal

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 98 08868 A (PRAECIS PHARM INC) 5 March 1998 (1998-03-05) the whole document ---	3-14
X	TJERNBERG L O ET AL: "CONTROLLING AMYLOID BETA-PEPTIDE FIBRIL FORMATION WITH PROTEASE-STABLE LIGANDS" JOURNAL OF BIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY, US, AMERICAN SOCIETY OF BIOLOGICAL CHEMISTS, BALTIMORE, MD, vol. 272, no. 19, 9 May 1997 (1997-05-09), pages 12601-12605, XP002050230 ISSN: 0021-9258 See especially Fig.4 ---	3,4,7-14
A	WO 96 28471 A (PHARM PEPTIDES INC) 19 September 1996 (1996-09-19) the whole document ---	1-14

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

• Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified).

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention.

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing of the international search report
7 August 2000	23/08/2000
Name and mailing address of the ISA	Authorized officer

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inte	.ional Application No
PCT/US 00/05574	

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	WO 97 21728 A (KAROLINSKA INNOVATIONS AB ;NORDSTEDT CHRISTER (SE); NAESLUND JAN () 19 June 1997 (1997-06-19) the whole document -----	1-14
P, X	FINDEIS E.A.: "Modified peptide inhibitors of amyloid -beta-peptide polymerization" BIOCHEMISTRY, vol. 38, no. 21, 25 May 1999 (1999-05-25), page 6791-6800 XP002143947 EASTON, PA US see esp.page 6794, table 1 -----	3, 7-14

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/US 00 05574

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

This International Searching Authority found multiple (groups of) inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. Claims: 1,2(complete),4,7-14(partially)

Compounds having the structure defined in claim 1, their compositions and use

2. Claims: 3,5,6(complete),4,7-14(partially)

Compounds having the structure defined in claim 3, their compositions and use

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/US 00 05574

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

Continuation of Box I.2

Claims Nos.: 1,3,7-14(partially)

Present claims 1 and 3 relate to peptides having 2-35 amino acid residues, lacking any constant structural domain and almost any definition of the constituting amino acid residues, which peptides are defined by reference to desirable characteristics or properties, namely that they bind to natural beta-amyloid peptides or modulate the aggregation or inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural beta-amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural beta-amyloid peptides and are less prone to metabolism.

The claims cover all compounds having these characteristics or properties, whereas the application provides support within the meaning of Article 6 PCT and/or disclosure within the meaning of Article 5 PCT for only a very limited number of such compounds. In the present case, the claims so lack support, and the application so lacks disclosure, that a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope is impossible. Independent of the above reasoning, the claims also lack clarity (Article 6 PCT). An attempt is made to define the compounds by reference to a result to be achieved. Again, this lack of clarity in the present case is such as to render a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope impossible. Consequently, the search has been carried out for those parts of the claims which appear to be clear, supported and disclosed, namely those parts relating to the compounds defined in the claims 2,4-6.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 00/05574

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)			Publication date
WO 9808868	A 05-03-1998	AU 4238797	A	19-03-1998	
		EP 0929574	A	21-07-1999	
		US 5985242	A	16-11-1999	
WO 9628471	A 19-09-1996	US 5817626	A	06-10-1998	
		US 5854215	A	29-12-1998	
		AU 5252496	A	02-10-1996	
		CA 2214247	A	19-09-1996	
		EP 0815134	A	07-01-1998	
		JP 11514333	T	07-12-1999	
		US 5854204	A	29-12-1998	
		US 5985242	A	16-11-1999	
WO 9721728	A 19-06-1997	AU 1072897	A	03-07-1997	
		EP 0866805	A	30-09-1998	

CORRECTED VERSION

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau(43) International Publication Date
8 September 2000 (08.09.2000)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 00/52048 A1(51) International Patent Classification⁷: C07K 14/47, A61K 38/17, G01N 33/68, A61P 25/28

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US00/05574

(22) International Filing Date: 3 March 2000 (03.03.2000)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
60/122,736 4 March 1999 (04.03.1999) US

(71) Applicant: PRAECIS PHARMACEUTICALS INCORPORATED [US/US]; One Hampshire Street, Cambridge, MA 02139 (US).

(72) Inventors: FINDEIS, Mark, A.: Apartment 3A, 45 Trowbridge Street, Cambridge, MA 02138 (US). PHILLIPS, Kathryn; 73 Mount Vernon Street, Boston, MA 02108 (US). OLSON, Gary, L.: 1505 Coles Avenue, Mountainside, NJ 07092 (US). SELF, Christopher; 32 Natalie Drive, West Caldwell, NJ 07006 (US).

(74) Agents: KARA, Catherine, J. et al.; Lahive & Cockfield, LLP, 28 State Street, Boston, MA 02109 (US).

(81) Designated States (national): AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.

(84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— with international search report

(48) Date of publication of this corrected version:

11 April 2002

(15) Information about Correction:

see PCT Gazette No. 15/2002 of 11 April 2002, Section II

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

WO 00/52048 A1

(54) Title: MODULATORS OF BETA-AMYLOID PEPTIDE AGGREGATION COMPRISING D-AMINO ACIDS

(57) **Abstract:** Compounds that modulate natural β amyloid peptide aggregation are provided. The modulators of the invention comprise a peptide, preferably based on a β amyloid peptide, that is comprised entirely of D-amino acids. Preferably, the peptide comprises 3-5 D-amino acid residues and includes at least two D-amino acid residues independently selected from the group consisting of D-leucine, D-phenylalanine and D-valine. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the peptide is a retro-inverso isomer of a β amyloid peptide, preferably a retro-inverso isomer of A β ₁₇₋₂₁. In certain embodiments, the peptide is modified at the amino-terminus, the carboxy-terminus, or both. Preferred amino-terminal modifying groups alkyl groups. Preferred carboxy-terminal modifying groups include an amide group, an acetate group, an alkyl amide group, an aryl amide group or a hydroxy group. Pharmaceutical compositions comprising the compounds of the invention, and diagnostic and treatment methods for amyloidogenic diseases using the compounds of the invention, are also disclosed.

MODULATORS OF BETA-AMYLOID PEPTIDE AGGREGATION COMPRISING D-AMINO ACIDS

Background of the Invention

Alzheimer's disease (AD), first described by the Bavarian psychiatrist Alois Alzheimer in 1907, is a progressive neurological disorder that begins with short term memory loss and proceeds to disorientation, impairment of judgment and reasoning and, ultimately, dementia. The course of the disease usually leads to death in a severely debilitated, immobile state between four and 12 years after onset. AD has been estimated to afflict 5 to 11 percent of the population over age 65 and as much as 47 percent of the population over age 85. The societal cost for managing AD is upwards of 80 billion dollars annually, primarily due to the extensive custodial care required for AD patients. Moreover, as adults born during the population boom of the 1940's and 1950's approach the age when AD becomes more prevalent, the control and treatment of AD will become an even more significant health care problem. Currently, there is no treatment that significantly retards the progression of the disease. For reviews on AD, see Selkoe, D.J. *Sci. Amer.*, November 1991, pp. 68-78; and Yankner, B.A. *et al.* (1991) *N. Eng. J. Med.* 325:1849-1857.

It has recently been reported (Games *et al.* (1995) *Nature* 373:523-527) that an Alzheimer-type neuropathology has been created in transgenic mice. The transgenic mice express high levels of human mutant amyloid precursor protein and progressively develop many of the pathological conditions associated with AD.

Pathologically, AD is characterized by the presence of distinctive lesions in the victim's brain. These brain lesions include abnormal intracellular filaments called neurofibrillary tangles (NTFs) and extracellular deposits of amyloidogenic proteins in senile, or amyloid, plaques. Amyloid deposits are also present in the walls of cerebral blood vessels of AD patients. The major protein constituent of amyloid plaques has been identified as a 4 kilodalton peptide called β -amyloid peptide (β -AP)(Glenner, G.G. and Wong, C.W. (1984) *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 120:885-890; Masters, C. *et al.* (1985) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82:4245-4249). Diffuse deposits of β -AP are frequently observed in normal adult brains, whereas AD brain tissue is characterized by

- 2 -

more compacted, dense-core β -amyloid plaques. (See e.g., Davies, L. *et al.* (1988) *Neurology* 38:1688-1693) These observations suggest that β -AP deposition precedes, and contributes to, the destruction of neurons that occurs in AD. In further support of a direct pathogenic role for β -AP, β -amyloid has been shown to be toxic to mature neurons, both in culture and *in vivo*. Yankner, B.A. *et al.* (1989) *Science* 245:417-420; 5 Yankner, B.A. *et al.* (1990) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87:9020-9023; Roher, A.E. *et al.* (1991) *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 174:572-579; Kowall, N.W. *et al.* (1991) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:7247-7251. Furthermore, patients with hereditary cerebral hemorrhage with amyloidosis-Dutch-type (HCHWA-D), which is characterized by 10 diffuse β -amyloid deposits within the cerebral cortex and cerebrovasculature, have been shown to have a point mutation that leads to an amino acid substitution within β -AP. Levy, E. *et al.* (1990) *Science* 248:1124-1126. This observation demonstrates that a specific alteration of the β -AP sequence can cause β -amyloid to be deposited.

Natural β -AP is derived by proteolysis from a much larger protein called the
15 amyloid precursor protein (APP). Kang, J. *et al.* (1987) *Nature* 325:733; Goldgaber, D.
et al. (1987) *Science* 235:877; Robakis, N.K. *et al.* (1987) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*
84:4190; Tanzi, R.E. *et al.* (1987) *Science* 235:880. The APP gene maps to
chromosome 21, thereby providing an explanation for the β -amyloid deposition seen at
an early age in individuals with Down's syndrome, which is caused by trisomy of
20 chromosome 21. Mann, D.M. *et al.* (1989) *Neuropathol. Appl. Neurobiol.* 15:317;
Rumble, B. *et al.* (1989) *N. Eng. J. Med.* 320:1446. APP contains a single membrane
spanning domain, with a long amino terminal region (about two-thirds of the protein)
extending into the extracellular environment and a shorter carboxy-terminal region
projecting into the cytoplasm. Differential splicing of the APP messenger RNA leads to
25 at least five forms of APP, composed of either 563 amino acids (APP-563), 695 amino
acids (APP-695), 714 amino acids (APP-714), 751 amino acids (APP-751) or 770 amino
acids (APP-770).

Within APP, naturally-occurring β amyloid peptide begins at an aspartic acid residue at amino acid position 672 of APP-770. Naturally-occurring β -AP derived from proteolysis of APP is 39 to 43 amino acid residues in length, depending on the carboxy-

- 3 -

terminal end point, which exhibits heterogeneity. The predominant circulating form of β -AP in the blood and cerebrospinal fluid of both AD patients and normal adults is β 1-40 ("short β "). Seubert, P. *et al.* (1992) *Nature* 359:325; Shoji, M. *et al.* (1992) *Science* 258:126. However, β 1-42 and β 1-43 ("long β ") also are forms in β -amyloid plaques.

5 Masters, C. *et al.* (1985) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82:4245; Miller, D. *et al.* (1993) *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.* 301:41; Mori, H. *et al.* (1992) *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:17082. Although the precise molecular mechanism leading to β -APP aggregation and deposition is unknown, the process has been likened to that of nucleation-dependent polymerizations, such as protein crystallization, microtubule formation and actin

10 polymerization. See *e.g.*, Jarrett, J.T. and Lansbury, P.T. (1993) *Cell* 73:1055-1058. In such processes, polymerization of monomer components does not occur until nucleus formation. Thus, these processes are characterized by a lag time before aggregation occurs, followed by rapid polymerization after nucleation. Nucleation can be accelerated by the addition of a "seed" or preformed nucleus, which results in rapid

15 polymerization. The long β forms of β -AP have been shown to act as seeds, thereby accelerating polymerization of both long and short β -AP forms. Jarrett, J.T. *et al.* (1993) *Biochemistry* 32:4693.

In one study, in which amino acid substitutions were made in β -AP, two mutant β peptides were reported to interfere with polymerization of non-mutated β -AP when the

20 mutant and non-mutant forms of peptide were mixed. Hilbich, C. *et al.* (1992) *J. Mol. Biol.* 228:460-473. Equimolar amounts of the mutant and non-mutant (*i.e.*, natural) β amyloid peptides were used to see this effect and the mutant peptides were reported to be unsuitable for use *in vivo*. Hilbich, C. *et al.* (1992), *supra*.

25 **Summary of the Invention**

This invention pertains to compounds, and pharmaceutical compositions thereof, that can bind to natural β amyloid peptides (β -AP), modulate the aggregation of natural β -AP and/or inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural β -APs. The compounds are modified in a manner which allows for increased biostability and prolonged elevated plasma levels.

30 The β -amyloid modulator compounds of the invention comprise a peptidic structure,

preferably based on β -amyloid peptide, that is composed entirely of D-amino acids. In various embodiments, the peptidic structure of the modulator compound comprises a D-amino acid sequence corresponding to a L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP, a D-amino acid sequence which is an inverso isomer of an L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP, a D-amino acid sequence which is a retro-inverso isomer of an L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP, or a D-amino acid sequence that is a scrambled or substituted version of an L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP. Preferably, the D-amino acid peptidic structure of the modulator is designed based upon a subregion of natural β -AP at positions 17-21 (A β ₁₇₋₂₀ and A β ₁₇₋₂₁, respectively), which has the amino acid sequences Leu-Val-Phe-Phe-Ala (SEQ ID NO:4). In preferred embodiments, a phenylalanine in the compounds of the invention is substituted with a phenylalanine analogue which is more stable and less prone to, for example, oxidative metabolism, or allows for increased brain levels of the compound.

In yet another embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention includes a β -amyloid peptide comprised of D-amino acids, L-amino acids or both, an inverso isomer of a β -amyloid peptide, or a retro-inverso isomer of a β -amyloid peptide which is attached to a hydrazine moiety, wherein the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides.

20 A modulator compound of the invention preferably comprises 3-20 D-amino acids, more preferably 3-10 D-amino acids and even more preferably 3-5 D-amino acids. The D-amino acid peptidic structure of the modulator can have free amino-, carboxy-, or carboxy amide- termini. Alternatively, the amino-terminus, the carboxy-terminus or both may be modified. For example, an N-terminal modifying group can be used that 25 enhances the ability of the compound to inhibit A β aggregation. Moreover, the amino- and/or carboxy termini of the peptide can be modified to alter a pharmacokinetic property of the compound (such as stability, bioavailability, e.g., enhanced delivery of the compound across the blood brain barrier and entry into the brain, and the like). Preferred amino-terminal modifying groups include alkyl groups, e.g., methyl, ethyl, or 30 isopropyl groups. Preferred carboxy-terminal modifying groups include amide groups,

alkyl or aryl amide groups (e.g., phenethylamide), hydroxy groups (i.e., reduction products of peptide acids, resulting in peptide alcohols), acyl amide groups, and acetyl groups. Still further, a modulator compound can be modified to label the compound with a detectable substance (e.g., a radioactive label).

5 In certain preferred embodiments, the invention provides a compound having the structure: N,N-dimethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-isopropyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-isopropylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-dimethylamide; N,N-diethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-diethyl-(D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-propyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-diethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Ile-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂; H-(D-Nle-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-NH₂; H-(D-Nle-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Nle)-NH₂; 1-piperidine-acetyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; 1-piperidine-acetyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu-isopropylamide; H-D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu-isopropylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-methylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-methylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-OH; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-

- 6 -

Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu- D-Lys-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu- D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu- D-Lys- D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-5 D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH-COCH₃; and H- D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH₂.

Particularly preferred compounds of the invention are set forth in the Examples.

Another aspect of the invention pertains to pharmaceutical compositions.

10 Typically, the pharmaceutical composition comprises a therapeutically effective amount of a modulator compound of the invention and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

Yet another aspect of the invention pertains to methods for inhibiting aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptides. These methods comprise contacting the natural β -amyloid peptides with a modulator compound of the invention such that 15 aggregation of the natural β -amyloid peptides is inhibited.

Yet another aspect of the invention pertains to methods for detecting the presence or absence of natural β -amyloid peptides in a biological sample. These methods comprise contacting a biological sample with a compound of the invention, wherein the compound is labeled with a detectable substance, and detecting the 20 compound bound to natural β -amyloid peptides to thereby detect the presence or absence of natural β -amyloid peptides in the biological sample.

Still another aspect of the invention pertains to methods for treating a subject for a disorder associated with β -amyloidosis. These methods comprise administering to the subject a therapeutically effective amount of a modulator compound of the invention 25 such that the subject is treated for a disorder associated with β -amyloidosis. Preferably, the disorder is Alzheimer's disease. Use of the modulators of the invention for therapy or for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a disorder associated with β -amyloidosis is also encompassed by the invention.

Brief Description of the Drawings

Figure 1 is a table depicting the results from a brain uptake assay.

Figure 2 is a graph depicting the results from the fibril binding assay described in Example 2.

5

Detailed Description of the Invention

This invention pertains to compounds, and pharmaceutical compositions thereof, that can bind to natural β -amyloid peptides, modulate the aggregation of natural β amyloid peptides (β -AP) and/or inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural β -APs. The 10 compounds are modified in a manner which allows for increased biostability and prolonged elevated plasma levels. A compound of the invention that modulates aggregation of natural β -AP, referred to herein interchangeably as a β amyloid modulator compound, a β amyloid modulator or simply a modulator, alters the aggregation of natural β -AP when the modulator is contacted with natural β -AP. Thus, 15 a compound of the invention acts to alter the natural aggregation process or rate for β -AP, thereby disrupting this process. Preferably, the compounds inhibit β -AP aggregation. The compounds of the invention are characterized in that they comprise a peptidic structure composed entirely of D-amino acid residues. This peptidic structure is preferably based on β -amyloid peptide and can comprise, for example, a D-amino acid 20 sequence corresponding to a L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP, a D-amino acid sequence which is an inverso isomer of an L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP, a D-amino acid sequence which is a retro-inverso isomer of an L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP, or a D-amino acid sequence that is a scrambled or substituted version of an L-amino acid sequence found within natural β -AP. 25 In preferred embodiments, the phenylalanines in the compounds of the invention are substituted with phenylalanine analogues which are more stable and less prone to, for example, oxidative metabolism.

The invention encompasses modulator compounds comprising a D-amino acid peptidic structure having free amino-, carboxy-, or carboxy amide- termini, as well as

modulator compounds in which the amino-terminus, the carboxy-terminus, and/or side chain(s) of the peptidic structure are modified.

The β amyloid modulator compounds of the invention can be selected based upon their ability to bind to natural β -amyloid peptides, modulate the aggregation of natural β -AP *in vitro* and/or inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural β -AP fibrils for cultured cells (using assays described herein, for example, the neurotoxicity assay, the nucleation assay, or the fibril binding assay). Preferred modulator compounds inhibit the aggregation of natural β -AP and/or inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural β -AP. However, modulator compounds selected based on one or both of these properties may have additional properties *in vivo* that may be beneficial in the treatment of amyloidosis (J. S. Pachter *et al.* (1998) "A β 1-40 induced neurocytopathic activation of human monocytes is blocked by A β peptide aggregation inhibitors." *Neurobiology of Aging* (Abstracts: The 6th International Conference on Alzheimer's Disease and Related Disorders, Amsterdam, 18-23 July 1998) 19, S128 (Abstract 540); R. Weltstein, A. *et al.* (1998) 15 "Phagocytosis of Beta-Amyloid: A Possible Requisite for Neurotoxicity." *J. Neuroimmunology* (Special Issue: Abstracts of the International Society of Neuroimmunology Fifth International Congress, Montreal, Canada. 23-27 August 1998) 1998, 90, 32 (Abstract 162)). For example, the modulator compound may interfere with processing of natural β -AP (either by direct or indirect protease inhibition) or by 20 modulation of processes that produce toxic β -AP, or other APP fragments, *in vivo*. Alternatively, modulator compounds may be selected based on these latter properties, rather than inhibition of A β aggregation *in vitro*. Moreover, modulator compounds of the invention that are selected based upon their interaction with natural β -AP also may interact with APP or with other APP fragments. Still further, a modulator compound of 25 the invention can be characterized by its ability to bind to β -amyloid fibrils (which can be determined, for example, by radiolabeling the compound, contacting the compound with β -amyloid plaque and counting or detecting, e.g., by imaging, the compound bound to pathological forms of β -AP, e.g., the plaque), while not significantly altering the aggregation of the β -amyloid fibrils. Such a compound that binds efficiently to β - 30 amyloid fibrils while not significantly altering the aggregation of the β -amyloid fibrils

can be used, for example, to detect β -amyloid fibrils (e.g., for diagnostic purposes, as described further herein). It should be appreciated, however, that the ability of a particular compound to bind to β -amyloid fibrils and/or modulate their aggregation may vary depending upon the concentration of the compound. Accordingly, a compound 5 that, at a low concentration, binds to β -amyloid fibrils without altering their aggregation may nevertheless inhibit aggregation of the fibrils at a higher concentration. All such compounds having the property of binding to β -amyloid fibrils and/or modulating the aggregation of the fibrils are intended to be encompassed by the invention.

As used herein, a "modulator" of β -amyloid aggregation is intended to refer to an 10 agent that, when contacted with natural β amyloid peptides, alters the aggregation of the natural β amyloid peptides. The term "aggregation of β amyloid peptides" refers to a process whereby the peptides associate with each other to form a multimeric, largely insoluble complex. The term "aggregation" further is intended to encompass β amyloid fibril formation and also encompasses β -amyloid plaques.

15 The terms "natural β -amyloid peptide", "natural β -AP" and "natural A β peptide", used interchangeably herein, are intended to encompass naturally occurring proteolytic cleavage products of the β amyloid precursor protein (APP) which are involved in β -AP aggregation and β -amyloidosis. These natural peptides include β -amyloid peptides having 39-43 amino acids (i.e., A β ₁₋₃₉, A β ₁₋₄₀, A β ₁₋₄₁, A β ₁₋₄₂ and A β ₁₋₄₃). The 20 amino-terminal amino acid residue of natural β -AP corresponds to the aspartic acid residue at position 672 of the 770 amino acid residue form of the amyloid precursor protein ("APP-770"). The 43 amino acid long form of natural β -AP has the amino acid sequence DAEFRHDSGYEVHHQKLVFFAEDVGSNKGAIIGLMVGGVVIAT (also shown in SEQ ID NO:1), whereas the shorter forms have 1-4 amino acid residues 25 deleted from the carboxy-terminal end. The amino acid sequence of APP-770 from position 672 (i.e., the amino-terminus of natural β -AP) to its C-terminal end (103 amino acids) is shown in SEQ ID NO:2. The preferred form of natural β -AP for use in the aggregation assays described herein is A β ₁₋₄₀ or A β ₁₋₄₂.

- 10 -

In the presence of a modulator of the invention, aggregation of natural β amyloid peptides is "altered" or "modulated". The various forms of the term "alteration" or "modulation" are intended to encompass both inhibition of β -AP aggregation and promotion of β -AP aggregation. Aggregation of natural β -AP is "inhibited" in the presence of the modulator when there is a decrease in the amount and/or rate of β -AP aggregation as compared to the amount and/or rate of β -AP aggregation in the absence of the modulator. The various forms of the term "inhibition" are intended to include both complete and partial inhibition of β -AP aggregation. Inhibition of aggregation can be quantitated as the fold increase in the lag time for aggregation or as the decrease in the overall plateau level of aggregation (*i.e.*, total amount of aggregation), using an aggregation assay as described in the Examples. In various embodiments, a modulator of the invention increases the lag time of aggregation at least 1.2-fold, 1.5-fold, 1.8-fold, 2-fold, 2.5-fold, 3-fold, 4-fold or 5-fold, for example, when the compound is at a one molar equivalent to the β -AP. In various other embodiments, a modulator of the invention inhibits the plateau level of aggregation at least 10%, 20%, 30%, 40 %, 50 %, 75 % or 100 %.

A modulator which inhibits β -AP aggregation (an "inhibitory modulator compound") can be used to prevent or delay the onset of β -amyloid deposition. Preferably, inhibitory modulator compounds of the invention inhibit the formation and/or activity of neurotoxic aggregates of natural A β peptide (*i.e.*, the inhibitory compounds can be used to inhibit the neurotoxicity of β -AP). Additionally, the inhibitory compounds of the invention can reduce the neurotoxicity of preformed β -AP aggregates, indicating that the inhibitory modulators can either bind to preformed A β fibrils or soluble aggregate and modulate their inherent neurotoxicity or that the modulators can perturb the equilibrium between monomeric and aggregated forms of β -AP in favor of the non-neurotoxic form.

Alternatively, in another embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention promotes the aggregation of natural A β peptides. The various forms of the term "promotion" refer to an increase in the amount and/or rate of β -AP aggregation in the

presence of the modulator, as compared to the amount and/or rate of β -AP aggregation in the absence of the modulator. Such a compound which promotes $A\beta$ aggregation is referred to as a stimulatory modulator compound. Stimulatory modulator compounds may be useful for sequestering β -amyloid peptides, for example in a biological compartment where aggregation of β -AP may not be deleterious to thereby deplete β -AP from a biological compartment where aggregation of β -AP is deleterious. Moreover, stimulatory modulator compounds can be used to promote $A\beta$ aggregation in *in vitro* aggregation assays (e.g., assays such as those described in Example 2), for example in screening assays for test compounds that can then inhibit or reverse this $A\beta$ aggregation (i.e., a stimulatory modulator compound can act as a "seed" to promote the formation of $A\beta$ aggregates).

In a preferred embodiment, the modulators of the invention are capable of altering β -AP aggregation when contacted with a molar excess amount of natural β -AP. A "molar excess amount of natural β -AP" refers to a concentration of natural β -AP, in moles, that is greater than the concentration, in moles, of the modulator. For example, if the modulator and β -AP are both present at a concentration of 1 μ M, they are said to be "equimolar", whereas if the modulator is present at a concentration of 1 μ M and the β -AP is present at a concentration of 5 μ M, the β -AP is said to be present at a 5-fold molar excess amount compared to the modulator. In preferred embodiments, a modulator of the invention is effective at altering natural β -AP aggregation when the natural β -AP is present at at least a 2-fold, 3-fold or 5-fold molar excess compared to the concentration of the modulator. In other embodiments, the modulator is effective at altering β -AP aggregation when the natural β -AP is present at at least a 10-fold, 20-fold, 33-fold, 50-fold, 100-fold, 500-fold or 1000-fold molar excess compared to the concentration of the modulator.

As used herein, the term " β amyloid peptide comprised entirely of D-amino acids", as used in a modulator of the invention, is intended to encompass peptides having an amino acid sequence identical to that of the natural sequence in APP, as well as peptides having acceptable amino acid substitutions from the natural sequence, but

which is composed of D-amino acids rather than the natural L-amino acids present in natural β -AP. Acceptable amino acid substitutions are those that do not affect and/or may improve the ability of the D-amino acid-containing peptide to alter natural β -AP aggregation. Moreover, particular amino acid substitutions may further contribute to the 5 ability of the peptide to alter natural β -AP aggregation and/or may confer additional beneficial properties on the peptide (e.g., increased solubility, reduced association with other amyloid proteins, etc.). A peptide having an identical amino acid sequence to that found within a parent peptide but in which all L-amino acids have been substituted with all D-amino acids is also referred to as an "inverso" compounds. For example, if a 10 parent peptide is Thr-Ala-Tyr, the inverso form is D-Thr-D-Ala-D-Tyr.

As used herein, the term "retro-inverso isomer of a β amyloid peptide", as used in a modulator of the invention, is intended to encompass peptides in which the sequence of the amino acids is reversed as compared to the sequence in natural β -AP and all L-amino acids are replaced with D-amino acids. For example, if a parent peptide 15 is Thr-Ala-Tyr, the retro-inverso form is D-Tyr-D-Ala-D-Thr. Compared to the parent peptide, a retro-inverso peptide has a reversed backbone while retaining substantially the original spatial conformation of the side chains, resulting in a retro-inverso isomer with a topology that closely resembles the parent peptide. See Goodman *et al.* "Perspectives in Peptide Chemistry" pp. 283-294 (1981). See also U.S. Patent No. 4,522,752 by Sisto 20 for further description of "retro-inverso" peptides.

Various additional aspects of the modulators of the invention, and the uses thereof, are described in further detail in the following subsections.

I. Modulator Compounds

25 In one embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention comprises a β -amyloid peptide, the β -amyloid peptide being comprised entirely of D-amino acids, wherein the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. Preferably, the β -amyloid peptide of the modulator is 30 comprised of 3-20 D-amino acids, more preferably 3-10 D-amino acids, and even more

preferably 3-5 D-amino acids. In preferred embodiments, a phenylalanine in the compounds of the invention is substituted with a phenylalanine analogue which is more stable and less prone to, for example, oxidative metabolism.

In one embodiment, the β -amyloid peptide of the modulator is amino-terminally modified, for example, with a modifying group comprising an alkyl group such as a C1-C6 lower alkyl group, *e.g.*, a methyl, ethyl, or propyl group; or a cyclic, heterocyclic, polycyclic or branched alkyl group. Examples of suitable N-terminal modifying groups are described further in subsection II below. In another embodiment, the β -amyloid peptide of the modulator is carboxy-terminally modified, for example the modulator can 10 comprise a peptide amide, a peptide alkyl or aryl amide (*e.g.*, a peptide phenethylamide) or a peptide alcohol. Examples of suitable C-terminal modifying groups are described further in subsections II and III below. The β -amyloid peptide of the modulator may be modified to enhance the ability of the modulator to alter β -AP aggregation or neurotoxicity. Additionally or alternatively, β -amyloid peptide of the modulator may be 15 modified to alter a pharmacokinetic property of the modulator and/or to label the modulator with a detectable substance (described further in subsection III below).

In another embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention comprises a retro-inverso isomer of a β -amyloid peptide, wherein the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. Preferably, the 20 retro-inverso isomer of the β -amyloid peptide is comprised of 3-20 D-amino acids, more preferably 3-10 D-amino acids, and even more preferably 3-5 D-amino acids. In preferred embodiments, the phenylalanines in the compounds of the invention are substituted with phenylalanine analogues which are more stable and less prone to, for 25 example, oxidative metabolism.

In one embodiment, the retro-inverso isomer is amino-terminally modified, for example, with a modifying group comprising an alkyl group such as a C1-C6 lower alkyl group, *e.g.*, a methyl, ethyl, or propyl group; or a cyclic, heterocyclic, polycyclic or branched alkyl group. Examples of suitable N-terminal modifying groups are described 30 further in subsection II below. In another embodiment, the retro-inverso isomer is

carboxy-terminally modified, for example with an amide group, an alkyl or aryl amide group (*e.g.*, phenethylamide) or a hydroxy group (*i.e.*, the reduction product of a peptide acid, resulting in a peptide alcohol). Examples of suitable C-terminal modifying groups are described further in subsections II and III below. The retro-inverso isomer may be

5 modified to enhance the ability of the modulator to alter β -AP aggregation or neurotoxicity. Additionally or alternatively, the retro-inverso isomer may be modified to alter a pharmacokinetic property of the modulator and/or to label the modulator with a detectable substance (described further in subsection III below).

In yet another embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention includes a β -amyloid peptide comprised entirely or partially of D-amino acids, an inverso isomer of a β -amyloid peptide, or a retro-inverso isomer of a β -amyloid peptide which is attached to a hydrazine moiety, wherein the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. Preferably, the modulator 10 compound of the invention is comprised of 1-20 D-amino acids, more preferably 1-10 D-amino acids, even more preferably 1-5 D-amino acids, and most preferably 2-4 D-amino acids which are attached to a hydrazine moiety.

In one embodiment, the modulator compounds of the invention which include a hydrazine moiety are amino-terminally modified, for example with a modifying 20 comprising an alkyl group, *e.g.*, a methyl, ethyl, or isopropyl group. Examples of suitable N-terminal modifying groups are described further in subsection II below. In another embodiment, modulator compounds of the invention which include a hydrazine moiety are carboxy-terminally modified, for example with an acetyl. Examples of suitable C-terminal modifying groups are described further in subsections II and III 25 below. The modulator compounds of the invention which include a hydrazine moiety may be modified to enhance the ability of the modulator to alter β -AP aggregation or neurotoxicity. Additionally or alternatively, the modulator compounds of the invention which include a hydrazine moiety may be modified to alter a pharmacokinetic property of the modulator and/or to label the modulator with a detectable substance (described 30 further in subsection III below).

The modulators of the invention preferably are designed based upon the amino acid sequence of a subregion of natural β -AP. The term "subregion of a natural β -amyloid peptide" is intended to include amino-terminal and/or carboxy-terminal

5 deletions of natural β -AP. The term "subregion of natural β -AP" is not intended to include full-length natural β -AP (*i.e.*, "subregion" does not include $\text{A}\beta_{1-39}$, $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$, $\text{A}\beta_{1-41}$, $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ and $\text{A}\beta_{1-43}$). A preferred subregion of natural β -amyloid peptide is an "A β aggregation core domain" (ACD). As used herein, the term "A β aggregation core domain" refers to a subregion of a natural β -amyloid peptide that is sufficient to

10 modulate aggregation of natural β -APs when this subregion, in its L-amino acid form, is appropriately modified (*e.g.*, modified at the amino-terminus), as described in detail in U.S. patent application Serial No. 08/548,998 and U.S. patent application Serial No. 08/616,081, the entire contents of each of which are expressly incorporated herein by reference. Preferably, the ACD is modeled after a subregion of natural β -AP that is less

15 than 15 amino acids in length and more preferably is between 3-10 amino acids in length. In various embodiments, the ACD is modeled after a subregion of β -AP that is 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4 or 3 amino acids in length. In one embodiment, the subregion of β -AP upon which the ACD is modeled is an internal or carboxy-terminal region of β -AP (*i.e.*, downstream of the amino-terminus at amino acid position 1). In another

20 embodiment, the ACD is modeled after a subregion of β -AP that is hydrophobic. Preferred A β aggregation core domains encompass amino acid residues 17-20 or 17-21 of natural β -AP ($\text{A}\beta_{17-20}$ and $\text{A}\beta_{17-21}$, respectively) and analogues thereof, as described herein. The amino acid sequences of $\text{A}\beta_{17-20}$ and $\text{A}\beta_{17-21}$ are Leu-Val-Phe-Phe (SEQ ID NO:3) and Leu-Val-Phe-Phe-Ala (SEQ ID NO:4), respectively.

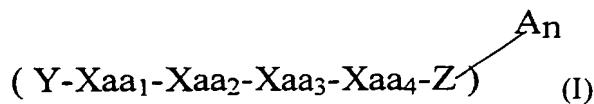
25 As demonstrated in the Examples, D-amino acid-containing modulators designed based upon the amino acid sequences of $\text{A}\beta_{17-20}$ and $\text{A}\beta_{17-21}$ are particularly effective inhibitors of A β aggregation and exhibit an enhanced biostability and prolonged elevated plasma levels. These modulators can comprise a D-amino acid sequence corresponding to the L-amino acid sequence of $\text{A}\beta_{17-20}$ or $\text{A}\beta_{17-21}$, a D-amino acid

sequence which is an inverso isomer of the L-amino acid sequence of A β ₁₇₋₂₀ or A β ₁₇₋₂₁, a D-amino acid sequence which is a retro-inverso isomer of the L-amino acid sequence of A β ₁₇₋₂₀ or A β ₁₇₋₂₁, or a D-amino acid sequence that is a scrambled or substituted version of the L-amino acid sequence of A β ₁₇₋₂₀ or A β ₁₇₋₂₁. In preferred 5 embodiments, a phenylalanine in the modulators designed based upon the amino acid sequences of A β ₁₇₋₂₀ and A β ₁₇₋₂₁ is substituted with a phenylalanine analogue which is more stable and less prone to, for example, oxidative metabolism. In other preferred embodiments, the modulators designed based upon the amino acid sequences of A β ₁₇₋₂₀ and A β ₁₇₋₂₁ further comprise a hydrazine moiety.

10 The D-amino acid-based modulators may have unmodified amino- and/or carboxy-termini and/or carboxy amide termini, or, alternatively, the amino-terminus, the carboxy-terminus, or both, may be modified (described further below). The peptidic structures of effective modulators generally are hydrophobic and are characterized by the presence of at least two D-amino acid structures independently selected from the group 15 consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure and a D-valine structure. As used herein, the term a "D-amino acid structure" (such as a "D-leucine structure", a "D-phenylalanine structure" or a "D-valine structure") is intended to include the D-amino acid, as well as analogues, derivatives and mimetics of the D-amino acid that maintain the functional activity of the compound (discussed further below). For 20 example, the term "D-phenylalanine structure" is intended to include D-phenylalanine as well as D-cyclohexylalanine [D-cha], D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine) {[p-F]f or D-[p-F]Phe}, D-pentafluorophenylalanine {[F₅]f or D-[F₅]Phe}, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, D-homophenylalanine, methyltyrosine, and benzylserine, as well as 25 substitution with D-lysine structure, D-valine structure, or a D-leucine structure. The term "D-leucine structure" is intended to include D-leucine, as well as substitution with D-valine, D-isoleucine, or other natural or non-natural amino acids having an aliphatic side chain, such as D-norleucine, or D-norvaline. The term "D-valine structure" is intended to include D-valine, as well as substitution with D-leucine or other natural or 30 non-natural amino acid having an aliphatic side chain.

In other embodiments, the peptidic structure of the modulator comprises at least two D-amino acid structures independently selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure, a D-valine structure, a D-alanine structure, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, and a D-lysine structure. In 5 another embodiment, the peptidic structure is comprised of at least three D-amino acid structures independently selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure and a D-valine structure. In yet another embodiment, the peptidic structure is comprised of at least three D-amino acid structures independently selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure, 10 a D-valine structure, a D-alanine structure, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, and a D-lysine structure. In yet another embodiment, the peptidic structure comprises at least four D-amino acid structures independently selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure and a D-valine structure. In yet another embodiment, the peptidic structure is comprised of at least four D-amino 15 acid structures independently selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure and a D-valine structure. In preferred embodiments, the peptidic structure includes at least one phenylalanine analogue which is more stable than phenylalanine and less prone to, for example, oxidative metabolism.

In one embodiment, the invention provides a β -amyloid modulator compound 20 comprising a formula (I):



25 wherein Xaa_1 , Xaa_2 , Xaa_3 and Xaa_4 are each D-amino acid structures and at least two of Xaa_1 , Xaa_2 , Xaa_3 and Xaa_4 are, independently, selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine),

- 18 -

D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, and a D-valine structure;

Y, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_a, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and a is an integer from 1 to 15;

5 Z, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_b, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and b is an integer from 1 to 15;

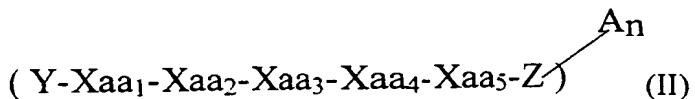
A, which may or may not be present, is a modifying group attached directly or indirectly to the compound; and

n is an integer from 1 to 15;

10 wherein Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃, Xaa₄, Y, Z, A and n are selected such that the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides, and is less prone to metabolism, e.g., oxidative metabolism.

15 In a subembodiment of this formula, a fifth amino acid residue, Xaa₅, is specified C-terminal to Xaa₄ and Z, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_b, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and b is an integer from 1 to 14. Accordingly, the invention provides a β -amyloid modulator compound comprising a formula (II):

20



wherein b is an integer from 1 to 14.

25 In a preferred embodiment, Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃, Xaa₄ of formula (I) are selected based on the sequence of A β ₁₇₋₂₀, or acceptable substitutions thereof. Accordingly, in preferred embodiments, Xaa₁ is a D-alanine structure or a D-leucine structure, Xaa₂ is a D-valine structure or a D-phenylalanine structure, Xaa₃ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine

structure, or a D-lysine structure and Xaa₄ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure.

In another preferred embodiment, Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃, Xaa₄ and Xaa₅ of formula (II) are selected based on the sequence of A β ₁₇₋₂₁, or acceptable substitutions thereof. Accordingly, in preferred embodiments, Xaa₁ is a D-alanine structure or a D-leucine structure, Xaa₂ is a D-valine structure, Xaa₃ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure, Xaa₄ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine),

10 D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure, Xaa₅ is a D-alanine structure or a D-leucine structure.

15 D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure, and Xaa₅ is a D-alanine structure or a D-leucine structure.

In another preferred embodiment, Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃ and Xaa₄ of formula (I) are selected based on the retro-inverso isomer of A β ₁₇₋₂₀, or acceptable substitutions thereof. Accordingly, in preferred embodiments, Xaa₁ is a D-alanine structure, a D-leucine structure, or a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-

20 homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, a D-leucine structure, a D-valine structure, or a D-lysine structure; Xaa₂ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a

25 D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure; Xaa₃ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine,

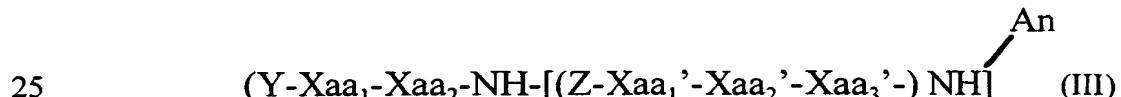
30 (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure; Xaa₄ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine

- 20 -

(para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure; and Xaa₄ is a D-valine structure or a D-leucine structure.

5 In another preferred embodiment, Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃, Xaa₄ and Xaa₅ of formula (II) are selected based on the retroinverso isomer of A β ₁₇₋₂₁, or acceptable substitutions thereof. Accordingly, in preferred embodiments, Xaa₁ is a D-alanine structure, a D-leucine structure or a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, 10 chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure; Xaa₂ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D-15 homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine structure; Xaa₃ is a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, D-pyridylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, or a D-lysine 20 structure; Xaa₄ is a D-valine structure or a D-leucine structure and Xaa₅ is a D-leucine structure.

In another embodiment, the invention provides a β -amyloid modulator compound comprising a formula (III):



wherein Xaa₁ and Xaa₂ are each D-amino acid structures and at least two of Xaa₁ and Xaa₂ are, independently, selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, 30 D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine,

chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, a D-lysine structure, or a D-valine structure;

NH-NH is a hydrazine structure;

5 Y, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_a, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and a is an integer from 1 to 15;

Xaa₁', Xaa₂', and Xaa₃' which may or may not be present, are each D-amino acid or L-amino acid structures and at least two of Xaa₁', Xaa₂', and Xaa₃' are, independently, selected from the group consisting of a D- or L-leucine structure, a D- or 10 L-phenylalanine structure, e.g., D-cyclohexylalanine, D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), D-pentafluorophenylalanine, chlorophenylalanine, bromophenylalanine, nitrophenylalanine, and D-homophenylalanine, a D- or L-tyrosine structure, a D- or L-iodotyrosine structure, a D- or L-lysine structure, or a D- or L-valine structure;

15 Z, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_b, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and b is an integer from 1 to 15;

A, which may or may not be present, is a modifying group attached directly or indirectly to the compound; and

n is an integer from 1 to 15;

20 wherein Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₁', Xaa₂', Xaa₃', Y, Z, A and n are selected such that the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides, and is less prone to metabolism, e.g., oxidative metabolism.

In the modulators of the invention having the formula (I), (II), or (III) shown above, an optional modifying group ("A") is attached directly or indirectly to the peptidic structure of the modulator. (As used herein, the term "modulating group" and "modifying group" are used interchangeably to describe a chemical group directly or indirectly attached to a peptidic structure). For example, a modifying group(s) can be directly attached by covalent coupling to the peptidic structure or a modifying group(s) 25 can be attached indirectly by a stable non-covalent association. In one embodiment of

the invention, a modifying group is attached to the amino-terminus of the modulator. Alternatively, in another embodiment of the invention, a modifying group is attached to the carboxy-terminus of the modulator. In other embodiments, the modifying group is attached to both the amino and the carboxy-terminus of the modulator. In yet another 5 embodiment, a modulating group(s) is attached to the side chain of at least one amino acid residues of the peptidic structure of the modulator (e.g., through the epsilon amino group of a lysyl residue(s), through the carboxyl group of an aspartic acid residue(s) or a glutamic acid residue(s), through a hydroxy group of a tyrosyl residue(s), a serine residue(s) or a threonine residue(s) or other suitable reactive group on an amino acid side 10 chain).

If a modifying group(s) is present, the modifying group is selected such that the compound inhibits aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. Accordingly, since the β -AP peptide of the compound is modified from its natural state, the modifying group "A" as used herein is not intended 15 to include hydrogen. In a modulator of the invention, a single modifying group may be attached to the peptidic structure or multiple modifying groups may be attached to the peptidic structure. The number of modifying groups is selected such that the compound inhibits aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. However, n preferably is an integer between 1 and 60, more 20 preferably between 1 and 30 and even more preferably between 1 and 10 or 1 and 5. In a preferred embodiment, A is an amino-terminal modifying group comprising a cyclic, heterocyclic, polycyclic, linear, or branched alkyl group and n=1. In another preferred embodiment, A is carboxy-terminally modifying group comprising an amide group, an alkyl amide group, an aryl amide group or a hydroxy group, and n=1. Suitable 25 modifying groups are described further in subsections II and III below.

In preferred specific embodiments, the invention provides a β -amyloid modulator compound comprising a peptidic structure selected from the group consisting of (D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:5); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-Cha-D-Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:6); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:7); (D- 30 Leu-D-Val-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:8); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F-

_s]Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:9); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-[F_s]Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:10); (D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:11); (D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:12); D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[F_s]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:13); (D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:14); (D-Leu-D-Cha-D-5 Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:15); (D-Leu-D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:16); (D-Leu-D-[F_s]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:17); (D-Leu-D-Lys-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:18); (D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:19); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-Cha-D-Cha-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:20); (D-Leu-D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-10 Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:21); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:22); (D-Leu-D-[F_s]Phe-D-[F_s]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:23); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-[F_s]Phe-D-[F_s]Phe-D-Leu) (SEQ ID NO:24); (D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe) (SEQ ID NO:25).

Any of the aforementioned specific peptidic structures can be amino-terminally and/or carboxy-terminally modified and described further in subsections II and/or III 15 below.

Particularly preferred modulators of the invention include the following:
N,N-dimethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-isopropyl-(Gly-D-Ala-20 D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-isopropylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-dimethylamide; N,N-diethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-diethyl-(D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-25 Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-propyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-diethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Val-D-Phe-D-30 Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Ile-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂; H-(D-Nle-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-NH₂; H-(D-Nle-D-Val-D-

Phe-D-Phe-D-Nle)-NH₂; 1-piperidine-acetyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; 1-piperidine-acetyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu-isopropylamide; H-D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu-isopropylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-methylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-methylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-OH; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Lys-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Lys-D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-(H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe)-NH; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH-COCH₃; and H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH₂.

Even more preferred compounds of the invention include PPI-1319: H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-[p-F]D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂ and PPI-1019: N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂. (As described above, D-Cha stands for D-cyclohexylalanine; [p-F]f or D-[p-F]Phe stands for D-4-fluorophenylalanine (also *para*-fluorophenylalanine); [F₅]f or D-[F₅]Phe stands for D-pentafluorophenylalanine; and D-Nle stands for D-norleucine).

The D-amino acid peptidic structures of the modulators of the invention are further intended to include other peptide modifications, including analogues, derivatives and mimetics, that retain the ability of the modulator to alter natural β -AP aggregation as described herein. For example, a D-amino acid peptidic structure of a modulator of the invention may be further modified to increase its stability, bioavailability, and solubility. The terms "analogue", "derivative" and "mimetic" as used herein are intended to include molecules which mimic the chemical structure of a D-peptidic

structure and retain the functional properties of the D-peptidic structure. Approaches to designing peptide analogs, derivatives and mimetics are known in the art. For example, see Farmer, P.S. in Drug Design (E.J. Ariens, ed.) Academic Press, New York, 1980, vol. 10, pp. 119-143; Ball, J.B. and Alewood, P.F. (1990) *J. Mol. Recognition* 3:55;

5 Morgan, B.A. and Gainor, J.A. (1989) *Ann. Rep. Med. Chem.* 24:243; and Freidinger, R.M. (1989) *Trends Pharmacol. Sci.* 10:270. See also Sawyer, T.K. (1995) "Peptidomimetic Design and Chemical Approaches to Peptide Metabolism" in Taylor, M.D. and Amidon, G.L. (eds.) *Peptide-Based Drug Design: Controlling Transport and Metabolism*, Chapter 17; Smith, A.B. 3rd, *et al.* (1995) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 117:11113-

10 Smith, A.B. 3rd, *et al.* (1994) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 116:9947-9962; and Hirschman, R., *et al.* (1993) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 115:12550-12568.

As used herein, a "derivative" of a compound X (e.g., a peptide or amino acid) refers to a form of X in which one or more reaction groups on the compound have been derivatized with a substituent group. Examples of peptide derivatives include peptides 15 in which an amino acid side chain, the peptide backbone, or the amino- or carboxy- terminus has been derivatized (e.g., peptidic compounds with methylated amide linkages). As used herein an "analogue" of a compound X refers to a compound which retains chemical structures of X necessary for functional activity of X yet which also contains certain chemical structures which differ from X. An examples of an analogue 20 of a naturally-occurring peptide is a peptide which includes one or more non-naturally- occurring amino acids. As used herein, a "mimetic" of a compound X refers to a compound in which chemical structures of X necessary for functional activity of X have been replaced with other chemical structures which mimic the conformation of X. Examples of peptidomimetics include peptidic compounds in which the peptide 25 backbone is substituted with one or more benzodiazepine molecules (see e.g., James, G.L. *et al.* (1993) *Science* 260:1937-1942).

Analogues of the modulator compounds of the invention are intended to include compounds in which one or more D-amino acids of the peptidic structure are substituted with a homologous amino acid such that the properties of the original modulator are 30 maintained. Preferably conservative amino acid substitutions are made at one or more amino acid residues. A "conservative amino acid substitution" is one in which the

- 26 -

amino acid residue is replaced with an amino acid residue having a similar side chain. Families of amino acid residues having similar side chains have been defined in the art, including basic side chains (e.g., lysine, arginine, histidine), acidic side chains (e.g., aspartic acid, glutamic acid), uncharged polar side chains (e.g., glycine, asparagine, 5 glutamine, serine, threonine, tyrosine, cysteine), nonpolar side chains (e.g., alanine, valine, leucine, isoleucine, proline, phenylalanine, methionine, tryptophan), β -branched side chains (e.g., threonine, valine, isoleucine) and aromatic side chains (e.g., tyrosine, phenylalanine, tryptophan, histidine). Non-limiting examples of homologous substitutions that can be made in the peptidic structures of the modulators of the 10 invention include substitution of D-phenylalanine with D-tyrosine, D-pyridylalanine or D-homophenylalanine, substitution of D-leucine with D-valine or other natural or non-natural amino acid having an aliphatic side chain and/or substitution of D-valine with D-leucine or other natural or non-natural amino acid having an aliphatic side chain.

The term mimetic, and in particular, peptidomimetic, is intended to include 15 isosteres. The term "isostere" as used herein is intended to include a chemical structure that can be substituted for a second chemical structure because the steric conformation of the first structure fits a binding site specific for the second structure. The term specifically includes peptide back-bone modifications (i.e., amide bond mimetics) well known to those skilled in the art. Such modifications include modifications of the amide 20 nitrogen, the α -carbon, amide carbonyl, complete replacement of the amide bond, extensions, deletions or backbone crosslinks. Several peptide backbone modifications are known, including ψ [CH₂S], ψ [CH₂NH], ψ [CSNH₂], ψ [NHCO], ψ [COCH₂], and ψ [(E) or (Z) CH=CH]. In the nomenclature used above, ψ indicates the absence of an 25 amide bond. The structure that replaces the amide group is specified within the brackets.

Other possible modifications include an N-alkyl (or aryl) substitution (ψ [CONR]), or backbone crosslinking to construct lactams and other cyclic structures. Other derivatives of the modulator compounds of the invention include C-terminal hydroxymethyl derivatives, *O*-modified derivatives (e.g., C-terminal hydroxymethyl 30 benzyl ether), N-terminally modified derivatives including substituted amides such as

alkylamides and hydrazides and compounds in which a C-terminal phenylalanine residue is replaced with a phenethylamide analogue (e.g., Val-Phe-phenethylamide as an analogue of the tripeptide Val-Phe-Phe).

The modulator compounds of the invention can be incorporated into 5 pharmaceutical compositions (described further in subsection V below) and can be used in detection and treatment methods as described further in subsection VI below.

II. Modifying Groups

In certain embodiments, the modulator compounds of the invention are coupled 10 directly or indirectly to at least one modifying group (abbreviated as MG). The term "modifying group" is intended to include structures that are directly attached to the D-amino acid peptidic structure (e.g., by covalent coupling), as well as those that are indirectly attached to the peptidic structure (e.g., by a stable non-covalent association or by covalent coupling to additional amino acid residues, or mimetics, analogues or 15 derivatives thereof, which may flank the A β -derived D-amino acid peptidic structure). For example, the modifying group can be coupled to the amino-terminus or carboxy-terminus of an A β -derived D-amino acid peptidic structure, or to a peptidic or peptidomimetic region flanking the core domain. Alternatively, the modifying group can be coupled to a side chain of at least one D-amino acid residue of an A β -derived D- 20 amino acid peptidic structure, or to a peptidic or peptidomimetic region flanking the core domain (e.g., through the epsilon amino group of a lysyl residue(s), through the carboxyl group of an aspartic acid residue(s) or a glutamic acid residue(s), through a hydroxy group of a tyrosyl residue(s), a serine residue(s) or a threonine residue(s) or other suitable reactive group on an amino acid side chain). Modifying groups covalently 25 coupled to the D-amino acid peptidic structure can be attached by means and using methods well known in the art for linking chemical structures, including, for example, amide, alkylamino, carbamate, urea or ester bonds.

The term "modifying group" is intended to include groups that are not naturally coupled to natural A β peptides in their native form. Accordingly, the term "modifying 30 group" is not intended to include hydrogen. The modifying group(s) is selected such

that the modulator compound alters, and preferably inhibits, aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides. Although not intending to be limited by mechanism, in embodiments where

5 the modulator comprises a modifying group(s), the modifying group(s) is thought to function as a key pharmacophore that enhances the ability of the modulator to disrupt A β polymerization.

In a preferred embodiment, the modifying group(s) comprises an alkyl group. The term "alkyl", as used herein, refers to a straight or branched chain hydrocarbon group having from about 1 to about 10 carbon atoms. Exemplary alkyl groups include methyl, ethyl, dimethyl, diethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, n-pentyl, and n-hexyl. An alkyl group may be unsubstituted, or may be substituted at one or more positions, with, e.g., halogens, alkyls, cycloalkyls, alkenyls, alkynyls, aryls, heterocycles, hydroxyls, aminos, nitros, thiols, amines, imines, amides, 15 phosphonates, phosphines, carbonyls, carboxyls, silyls, ethers, thioethers, sulfonyls, selenoethers, ketones, aldehydes, esters, -CF₃, -CN, or the like. Preferred alkyls are methyls, ethyls, dimethyls, diethyls, n-propyls, isopropyls.

In another embodiment, one modifying group, e.g., an alkyl group, is coupled to another modifying group. In yet another embodiment, a D-amino acid in a modulator 20 compound of the invention is modified with two modifying groups. Accordingly, preferred modifying groups include a 1-piperidine acetyl group.

In a preferred embodiment, the modifying group(s) comprises a cyclic, heterocyclic, polycyclic or branched alkyl group. The term "cyclic group", as used herein, is intended to include cyclic saturated or unsaturated (*i.e.*, aromatic) group 25 having from about 3 to 10, preferably about 4 to 8, and more preferably about 5 to 7, carbon atoms. Exemplary cyclic groups include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, and cyclooctyl. Cyclic groups may be unsubstituted or substituted at one or more ring positions. Thus, a cyclic group may be substituted with, *e.g.*, halogens, alkyls, cycloalkyls, alkenyls, alkynyls, aryls, heterocycles, hydroxyls, aminos, nitros, 30 thiols amines, imines, amides, phosphonates, phosphines, carbonyls, carboxyls, silyls,

ethers, thioethers, sulfonyls, sulfonates, selenoethers, ketones, aldehydes, esters, -CF₃, -CN, or the like.

The term "heterocyclic group" is intended to include cyclic saturated or unsaturated (*i.e.*, aromatic) group having from about 3 to 10, preferably about 4 to 8, and 5 more preferably about 5 to 7, carbon atoms, wherein the ring structure includes about one to four heteroatoms. Heterocyclic groups include pyrrolidine, oxolane, thiolane, imidazole, oxazole, piperidine, piperazine, morpholine and pyridine. The heterocyclic ring can be substituted at one or more positions with such substituents as, for example, halogens, alkyls, cycloalkyls, alkenyls, alkynyls, aryls, other heterocycles, hydroxyl, 10 amino, nitro, thiol, amines, imines, amides, phosphonates, phosphines, carbonyls, carboxyls, silyls, ethers, thioethers, sulfonyls, selenoethers, ketones, aldehydes, esters, -CF₃, -CN, or the like. Heterocycles may also be bridged or fused to other cyclic groups 15 as described below.

The term "polycyclic group" as used herein is intended to refer to two or more 15 saturated or unsaturated (*i.e.*, aromatic) cyclic rings in which two or more carbons are common to two adjoining rings, *e.g.*, the rings are "fused rings". Rings that are joined through non-adjacent atoms are termed "bridged" rings. Each of the rings of the polycyclic group can be substituted with such substituents as described above, as for example, halogens, alkyls, cycloalkyls, alkenyls, alkynyls, hydroxyl, amino, nitro, thiol, 20 amines, imines, amides, phosphonates, phosphines, carbonyls, carboxyls, silyls, ethers, thioethers, sulfonyls, selenoethers, ketones, aldehydes, esters, -CF₃, -CN, or the like.

A preferred polycyclic group is a group containing a cis-decalin structure. 25 Although not intending to be limited by mechanism, it is thought that the "bent" conformation conferred on a modifying group by the presence of a cis-decalin structure contributes to the efficacy of the modifying group in disrupting A β polymerization. Accordingly, other structures which mimic the "bent" configuration of the cis-decalin structure can also be used as modifying groups. An example of a cis-decalin containing structure that can be used as a modifying group is a cholanoyl structure, such as a cholyl group. For example, a modulator compound can be modified at its amino terminus with 30 a cholyl group by reacting the aggregation core domain with cholic acid, a bile acid. Moreover, a modulator compound can be modified at its carboxy terminus with a cholyl

- 30 -

group according to methods known in the art (see *e.g.*, Wess, G. *et al.* (1993) *Tetrahedron Letters*, 34:817-822; Wess, G. *et al.* (1992) *Tetrahedron Letters* 33:195-198; and Kramer, W. *et al.* (1992) *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:18598-18604). Cholyl derivatives and analogues can also be used as modifying groups. For example, a preferred cholyl derivative is Aic (3-(*O*-aminoethyl-*iso*)-cholyl), which has a free amino group that can be used to further modify the modulator compound (*e.g.*, a chelation group for ^{99m}Tc can be introduced through the free amino group of Aic). As used herein, the term "cholanoyl structure" is intended to include the cholyl group and derivatives and analogues thereof, in particular those which retain a four-ring *cis*-decalin configuration.

5 Examples of cholanoyl structures include groups derived from other bile acids, such as deoxycholic acid, lithocholic acid, ursodeoxycholic acid, chenodeoxycholic acid and hyodeoxycholic acid, as well as other related structures such as cholic acid, bufalin and resibufogenin (although the latter two compounds are not preferred for use as a modifying group). Another example of a *cis*-decalin containing compound is 5 β -

10 15 cholestan-3 α -ol (the *cis*-decalin isomer of (+)-dihydrocholesterol). For further description of bile acid and steroid structure and nomenclature, see Nes, W.R. and McKean, M.L. *Biochemistry of Steroids and Other Isopentanoids*, University Park Press, Baltimore, MD, Chapter 2.

In addition to *cis*-decalin containing groups, other polycyclic groups may be used

20 as modifying groups. For example, modifying groups derived from steroids or β -lactams may be suitable modifying groups. In one embodiment, the modifying group is a "biotinyl structure", which includes biotinyl groups and analogues and derivatives thereof (such as a 2-iminobiotinyl group). In another embodiment, the modifying group can comprise a "fluorescein-containing group", such as a group derived from reacting an

25 A β -derived peptidic structure with 5-(and 6)-carboxyfluorescein, succinimidyl ester or fluorescein isothiocyanate. In various other embodiments, the modifying group(s) can comprise an *N*-acetylneuraminyl group, a *trans*-4-cotininecarboxyl group, a 2-imino-1-imidazolidineacetyl group, an (*S*)-(-)-indoline-2-carboxyl group, a (-)-menthoxyacetyl group, a 2-norbornaneacetyl group, a γ -oxo-5-acenaphthenebutyryl, a (-)-2-oxo-4-

30 thiazolidinecarboxyl group, a tetrahydro-3-furoyl group, a 2-iminobiotinyl group, a

- 31 -

diethylenetriaminepentaacetyl group, a 4-morpholinecarbonyl group, a 2-thiopheneacetyl group or a 2-thiophenesulfonyl group.

In addition to the cyclic, heterocyclic and polycyclic groups discussed above, other types of modifying groups can be used in a modulator of the invention. For 5 example, hydrophobic groups and branched alkyl groups may be suitable modifying groups. Examples include acetyl groups, phenylacetyl groups, phenylacetyl groups, diphenylacetyl groups, triphenylacetyl groups, isobutanoyl groups, 4-methylvaleryl groups, *trans*-cinnamoyl groups, butanoyl groups and 1-adamantanecarbonyl groups.

Yet another type of modifying group is a compound that contains a non-natural 10 amino acid that acts as a beta-turn mimetic, such as a dibenzofuran-based amino acid described in Tsang, K.Y. et al. (1994) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 116:3988-4005; Diaz, H and Kelly, J.W. (1991) *Tetrahedron Letters* 41:5725-5728; and Diaz, H et al. (1992) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 114:8316-8318. An example of such a modifying group is a peptide-15 aminoethyldibenzofuranyl-propionic acid (Adp) group (e.g., DDIIL-Adp) (SEQ ID NO: 31). This type of modifying group further can comprise one or more N-methyl peptide bonds to introduce additional steric hindrance to the aggregation of natural β -AP when compounds of this type interact with natural β -AP.

Yet another type of modifying group is an NH-OR group, where the R can be any of the modified or unmodified alkyl or cycloalkyl groups described herein.

20 Non-limiting examples of suitable modifying groups, with their corresponding modifying reagents, are listed below:

<u>Modifying Group</u>	<u>Modifying Reagent</u>
Methyl-	Methylamine, Fmoc-D-[Me]-Leu-OH, methylamine and a bromoacetylpeptide
Ethyl-	Ethylamine, acetaldehyde and sodium cyanoborohydride, ethylamine and a bromoacetylpeptide
Propyl-	Propylamine, propionaldehyde and sodium cyanoborohydride, propylamine and a bromoacetylpeptide
Isopropyl-	Isopropylamine, isopropylamine and a bromoacetylpeptide
Piperidine-	Piperidine and a bromoacetylpeptide
Acetyl-	Acetic anhydride, acetic acid
Dimethyl-	Methylamine, formaldehyde and sodium cyanoborohydride
Diethyl-	Acetaldehyde and sodium cyanoborohydride
Cholyl-	Cholic acid
Lithocholyl-	Lithocholic acid
Hyodeoxycholyl-	Hyodeoxycholic acid
Chenodeoxycholyl-	Chenodeoxycholic acid
Ursodeoxycholyl-	Ursodeoxycholic acid
3-Hydroxycinnamoyl-	3-Hydroxycinnamic acid
4-Hydroxycinnamoyl-	4-Hydroxycinnamic acid
2-Hydroxycinnamoyl-	2-Hydroxycinnamic acid
3-Hydroxy-4-methoxycinnamoyl-	3-Hydroxy-4-methoxycinnamic acid
4-Hydroxy-3-methoxycinnamoyl-	4-Hydroxy-3-methoxycinnamic acid
2-Carboxycinnamoyl-	2-Carboxycinnamic acid

3-Formylbenzoyl	3-Carboxybenzaldehyde
4-Formylbenzoyl	4-Carboxybenzaldehyde
3,4,-Dihydroxyhydrocinnamoyl-	3,4,-Dihydroxyhydrocinnamic acid
3,7-Dihydroxy-2-naphthoyl-	3,7-Dihydroxy-2-naphthoic acid
4-Formylcinnamoyl-	4-Formylcinnamic acid
2-Formylphenoxyacetyl-	2-Formylphenoxyacetic acid
8-Formyl-1-naphthoyl	1,8-naphthaldehydic acid
4-(hydroxymethyl)benzoyl-	4-(hydroxymethyl)benzoic acid
4-Hydroxyphenylacetyl-	4-Hydroxyphenylacetic acid
3-Hydroxybenzoyl-	3-Hydroxybenzoic acid
4-Hydroxybenzoyl-	4-Hydroxybenzoic acid
5-Hydantoinacetyl-	5-Hydantoinacetic acid
L-Hydroorotyl-	L-Hydroorotic acid
4-Methylvaleryl-	4-Methylvaleric acid
2,4-Dihydroxybenzoyl-	2,4-Dihydroxybenzoic acid
3,4-Dihydroxycinnamoyl-	3,4-Dihydroxycinnamic acid
3,5-Dihydroxy-2-naphthoyl-	3,5-Dihydroxy-2-naphthoic acid
3-Benzoylpropanoyl-	3-Benzoylpropanoic acid
<i>trans</i> -Cinnamoyl-	<i>trans</i> -Cinnamic acid
Phenylacetyl-	Phenylacetic acid
Diphenylacetyl-	Diphenylacetic acid
Triphenylacetyl-	Triphenylacetic acid
2-Hydroxyphenylacetyl-	2-Hydroxyphenylacetic acid
3-Hydroxyphenylacetyl-	3-Hydroxyphenylacetic acid
4-Hydroxyphenylacetyl-	4-Hydroxyphenylacetic acid
(±)-Mandelyl-	(±)-Mandelic acid
(±)-2,4-Dihydroxy-3,3-dimethylbutanoyl	(±)-Pantolactone
Butanoyl-	Butanoic anhydride
Isobutanoyl-	Isobutanoic anhydride
Hexanoyl-	Hexanoic anhydride

Propionyl-	Propionic anhydride
3-Hydroxybutyroyl	β -Butyrolactone
4-Hydroxybutyroyl	γ -Butyrolactone
3-Hydroxypropionoyl	β -Propiolactone
2,4-Dihydroxybutyroyl	α -Hydroxy- β -Butyrolactone
1-Adamantanecarbonyl-	1-Adamantanecarbonic acid
Glycolyl-	Glycolic acid
DL-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)lactyl-	DL-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)lactic acid
3-(2-Hydroxyphenyl)propionyl-	3-(2-Hydroxyphenyl)propionic acid
4-(2-Hydroxyphenyl)propionyl-	4-(2-Hydroxyphenyl)propionic acid
D-3-Phenyllactyl-	D-3-Phenyllactic acid
Hydrocinnamoyl-	Hydrocinnamic acid
3-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)propionyl-	3-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)propionic acid
L-3-Phenyllactyl-	L-3-Phenyllactic acid
4-methylvaleryl	4-methylvaleric acid
3-pyridylacetyl	3-pyridylacetic acid
4-pyridylacetyl	4-pyridylacetic acid
Isonicotinoyl	
4-quinolinecarboxyl	4-quinolinecarboxylic acid
1-isoquinolinecarboxyl	1-isoquinolinecarboxylic acid
3-isoquinolinecarboxyl	3-isoquinolinecarboxylic acid

Preferred modifying groups include methyl-containing groups, ethyl-containing groups, propyl-containing groups, and piperidine-containing groups, e.g., a 1-piperidine-acetyl group.

III. Additional Chemical Modifications of A β Modulators

A β -amyloid modulator compound of the invention can be further modified to alter the specific properties of the compound while retaining the ability of the compound to alter A β aggregation and inhibit A β neurotoxicity. For example, in one embodiment,

the compound is further modified to alter a pharmacokinetic property of the compound, such as *in vivo* stability or half-life. In another embodiment, the compound is further modified to label the compound with a detectable substance. In yet another embodiment, the compound is further modified to couple the compound to an additional 5 therapeutic moiety. Schematically, a modulator of the invention comprising a D-amino acid A β aggregation core domain coupled directly or indirectly to at least one modifying group can be illustrated as MG-ACD, whereas this compound which has been further modified to alter the properties of the modulator can be illustrated as MG-ACD-CM, wherein CM represents an additional chemical modification.

10 To further chemically modify the compound, such as to alter the pharmacokinetic properties of the compound, reactive groups can be derivatized. For example, when the modifying group is attached to the amino-terminal end of the aggregation core domain, the carboxy-terminal end of the compound can be further modified. Preferred C-terminal modifications include those which reduce the ability of 15 the compound to act as a substrate for carboxypeptidases. Examples of preferred C-terminal modifiers include an amide group (*i.e.*, a peptide amide), an alkyl or aryl amide group (*e.g.*, an ethylamide group or a phenethylamide group) a hydroxy group (*i.e.*, a peptide alcohol) and various non-natural amino acids, such as D-amino acids and β -alanine. Alternatively, when the modifying group is attached to the carboxy-terminal 20 end of the aggregation core domain, the amino-terminal end of the compound can be further modified, for example, to reduce the ability of the compound to act as a substrate for aminopeptidases.

A modulator compound can be further modified to label the compound by reacting the compound with a detectable substance. Suitable detectable substances 25 include various enzymes, prosthetic groups, fluorescent materials, luminescent materials and radioactive materials. Examples of suitable enzymes include horseradish peroxidase, alkaline phosphatase, β -galactosidase, or acetylcholinesterase; examples of suitable prosthetic group complexes include streptavidin/biotin and avidin/biotin; examples of suitable fluorescent materials include umbelliflone, fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate, rhodamine, dichlorotriazinylamine fluorescein, dansyl 30

chloride or phycoerythrin; an example of a luminescent material includes luminol; and examples of suitable radioactive material include ^{14}C , ^{123}I , ^{124}I , ^{125}I , ^{131}I , $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$, ^{35}S or ^{3}H . In a preferred embodiment, a modulator compound is radioactively labeled with ^{14}C , either by incorporation of ^{14}C into the modifying group or one or more amino acid structures in the modulator compound. Labeled modulator compounds can be used to assess the *in vivo* pharmacokinetics of the compounds, as well as to detect $\text{A}\beta$ aggregation, for example for diagnostic purposes. $\text{A}\beta$ aggregation can be detected using a labeled modulator compound either *in vivo* or in an *in vitro* sample derived from a subject.

10 Preferably, for use as an *in vivo* diagnostic agent, a modulator compound of the invention is labeled with radioactive technetium or iodine. Accordingly, in one embodiment, the invention provides a modulator compound labeled with technetium, preferably $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$. Methods for labeling peptide compounds with technetium are known in the art (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,443,815, 5,225,180 and 5,405,597, all by Dean *et al.*; Stepniak-Biniakiewicz, D., *et al.* (1992) *J. Med. Chem.* 35:274-279; Fritzberg, A.R., *et al.* (1988) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85:4025-4029; Baidoo, K.E., *et al.* (1990) *Cancer Res. Suppl.* 50:799s-803s; and Regan, L. and Smith, C.K. (1995) *Science* 270:980-982). A modifying group can be chosen that provides a site at which a chelation group for $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$ can be introduced, such as the Aic derivative of cholic acid, which has a free amino group. In another embodiment, the invention provides a modulator compound labeled with radioactive iodine. For example, a phenylalanine residue within the $\text{A}\beta$ sequence (such as Phe₁₉ or Phe₂₀) can be substituted with radioactive iodotyrosyl. Any of the various isotopes of radioactive iodine can be incorporated to create a diagnostic agent. Preferably, ^{123}I (half-life = 13.2 hours) is used for whole body scintigraphy, ^{124}I (half life = 4 days) is used for positron emission tomography (PET), ^{125}I (half life = 60 days) is used for metabolic turnover studies and ^{131}I (half life = 8 days) is used for whole body counting and delayed low resolution imaging studies.

Furthermore, an additional modification of a modulator compound of the invention can serve to confer an additional therapeutic property on the compound. That is, the additional chemical modification can comprise an additional functional moiety. For example, a functional moiety which serves to break down or dissolve amyloid 5 plaques can be coupled to the modulator compound. In this form, the MG-ACD portion of the modulator serves to target the compound to A β peptides and disrupt the polymerization of the A β peptides, whereas the additional functional moiety serves to break down or dissolve amyloid plaques after the compound has been targeted to these sites.

10 In an alternative chemical modification, a β -amyloid compound of the invention is prepared in a "prodrug" form, wherein the compound itself does not modulate A β aggregation, but rather is capable of being transformed, upon metabolism *in vivo*, into a β -amyloid modulator compound as defined herein. For example, in this type of compound, the modulating group can be present in a prodrug form that is capable of 15 being converted upon metabolism into the form of an active modulating group. Such a prodrug form of a modifying group is referred to herein as a "secondary modifying group." A variety of strategies are known in the art for preparing peptide prodrugs that limit metabolism in order to optimize delivery of the active form of the peptide-based drug (see *e.g.*, Moss, J. (1995) in *Peptide-Based Drug Design: Controlling Transport and Metabolism*, Taylor, M.D. and Amidon, G.L. (eds), Chapter 18. Additionally 20 strategies have been specifically tailored to achieving CNS delivery based on "sequential metabolism" (see *e.g.*, Bodor, N., *et al.* (1992) *Science* 257:1698-1700; Prokai, L., *et al.* (1994) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 116:2643-2644; Bodor, N. and Prokai, L. (1995) in *Peptide-Based Drug Design: Controlling Transport and Metabolism*, Taylor, M.D. and Amidon, 25 G.L. (eds), Chapter 14. In one embodiment of a prodrug form of a modulator of the invention, the modifying group comprises an alkyl ester to facilitate blood-brain barrier permeability.

Modulator compounds of the invention can be prepared by standard techniques known in the art. The peptide component of a modulator can be synthesized using 30 standard techniques such as those described in Bodansky, M. *Principles of Peptide*

Synthesis, Springer Verlag, Berlin (1993) and Grant, G.A (ed.). *Synthetic Peptides: A User's Guide*, W.H. Freeman and Company, New York (1992). Automated peptide synthesizers are commercially available (e.g., Advanced ChemTech Model 396; Milligen/ Biosearch 9600). Additionally, one or more modulating groups can be

5 attached to the A β -derived peptidic component (e.g., an A β aggregation core domain) by standard methods, for example using methods for reaction through an amino group (e.g., the alpha-amino group at the amino-terminus of a peptide), a carboxyl group (e.g., at the carboxy terminus of a peptide), a hydroxyl group (e.g., on a tyrosine, serine or threonine residue) or other suitable reactive group on an amino acid side chain (see e.g.,

10 Greene, T.W and Wuts, P.G.M. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York (1991). Exemplary syntheses of D-amino acid β amyloid modulator are described further in Example 1.

IV. Screening Assays

15 Another aspect of the invention pertains to a method for selecting a modulator of β -amyloid aggregation. In the method, a test compound is contacted with natural β amyloid peptides, the aggregation of the natural β -AP is measured and a modulator is selected based on the ability of the test compound to alter the aggregation of the natural β -AP (e.g., inhibit or promote aggregation). In a preferred embodiment, the test

20 compound is contacted with a molar excess amount of the natural β -AP. The amount and/or rate of natural β -AP aggregation in the presence of the test compound can be determined by a suitable assay indicative of β -AP aggregation, as described herein (see e.g., Example 2).

In a preferred assay, the natural β -AP is dissolved in solution in the presence of

25 the test compound and aggregation of the natural β -AP is assessed in a nucleation assay (see Example 2) by assessing the turbidity of the solution over time, as measured by the apparent absorbance of the solution at 405 nm (described further in Example 2; see also Jarrett *et al.* (1993) *Biochemistry* 32:4693-4697). In the absence of a β -amyloid modulator, the $A_{405\text{nm}}$ of the solution typically stays relatively constant during a lag

30 time in which the β -AP remains in solution, but then the $A_{405\text{nm}}$ of the solution rapidly

increases as the β -AP aggregates and comes out of solution, ultimately reaching a plateau level (*i.e.*, the $A_{405\text{nm}}$ of the solution exhibits sigmoidal kinetics over time). In contrast, in the presence of a test compound that inhibits β -AP aggregation, the $A_{405\text{nm}}$ of the solution is reduced compared to when the modulator is absent. Thus, in the 5 presence of the inhibitory modulator, the solution may exhibit an increased lag time, a decreased slope of aggregation and/or a lower plateau level compared to when the modulator is absent. This method for selecting a modulator of β -amyloid polymerization can similarly be used to select modulators that promote β -AP aggregation. Thus, in the presence of a modulator that promotes β -AP aggregation, the 10 $A_{405\text{nm}}$ of the solution is increased compared to when the modulator is absent (*e.g.*, the solution may exhibit an decreased lag time, increase slope of aggregation and/or a higher plateau level compared to when the modulator is absent).

Another assay suitable for use in the screening method of the invention, a seeded extension assay, is also described further in Example 2. In this assay, β -AP monomer 15 and an aggregated β -AP "seed" are combined, in the presence and absence of a test compound, and the amount of β -fibril formation is assayed based on enhanced emission of the dye Thioflavine T when contacted with β -AP fibrils. Moreover, β -AP aggregation can be assessed by electron microscopy (EM) of the β -AP preparation in the presence or absence of the modulator. For example, β amyloid fibril formation, which is 20 detectable by EM, is reduced in the presence of a modulator that inhibits β -AP aggregation (*i.e.*, there is a reduced amount or number of β -fibrils in the presence of the modulator), whereas β fibril formation is increased in the presence of a modulator that promotes β -AP aggregation (*i.e.*, there is an increased amount or number of β -fibrils in the presence of the modulator).

25 Another preferred assay for use in the screening method of the invention to select suitable modulators is the neurotoxicity assay described in Example 3. Compounds are selected which inhibit the formation of neurotoxic $A\beta$ aggregates and/or which inhibit the neurotoxicity of preformed $A\beta$ fibrils. This neurotoxicity assay is considered to be predictive of neurotoxicity *in vivo*. Accordingly, inhibitory activity of a modulator

compound in the *in vitro* neurotoxicity assay is predictive of similar inhibitory activity of the compound for neurotoxicity *in vivo*.

V. Pharmaceutical Compositions

5 Another aspect of the invention pertains to pharmaceutical compositions of the β -amyloid modulator compounds of the invention. In one embodiment, the composition includes a β amyloid modulator compound in a therapeutically or prophylactically effective amount sufficient to alter, and preferably inhibit, aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptides, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. In another embodiment,

10 the composition includes a β amyloid modulator compound in a therapeutically or prophylactically effective amount sufficient to inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. A "therapeutically effective amount" refers to an amount effective, at dosages and for periods of time necessary, to achieve the desired therapeutic result, such as reduction or reversal of β -

15 amyloid deposition and/or reduction or reversal of A β neurotoxicity. A therapeutically effective amount of modulator may vary according to factors such as the disease state, age, sex, and weight of the individual, and the ability of the modulator to elicit a desired response in the individual. Dosage regimens may be adjusted to provide the optimum therapeutic response. A therapeutically effective amount is also one in which any toxic

20 or detrimental effects of the modulator are outweighed by the therapeutically beneficial effects. The potential neurotoxicity of the modulators of the invention can be assayed using the cell-based assay described in Example 6 and a therapeutically effective modulator can be selected which does not exhibit significant neurotoxicity. In a preferred embodiment, a therapeutically effective amount of a modulator is sufficient to

25 alter, and preferably inhibit, aggregation of a molar excess amount of natural β -amyloid peptides. A "prophylactically effective amount" refers to an amount effective, at dosages and for periods of time necessary, to achieve the desired prophylactic result, such as preventing or inhibiting the rate of β -amyloid deposition and/or A β neurotoxicity in a subject predisposed to β -amyloid deposition. A prophylactically

30 effective amount can be determined as described above for the therapeutically effective

- 41 -

amount. Typically, since a prophylactic dose is used in subjects prior to or at an earlier stage of disease, the prophylactically effective amount will be less than the therapeutically effective amount.

One factor that may be considered when determining a therapeutically or prophylactically effective amount of a β amyloid modulator is the concentration of natural β -AP in a biological compartment of a subject, such as in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of the subject. The concentration of natural β -AP in the CSF has been estimated at 3 nM (Schwartzman, (1994) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:8368-8372). A non-limiting range for a therapeutically or prophylactically effective amounts of a β amyloid modulator is 0.01 nM-10 μ M. It is to be noted that dosage values may vary with the severity of the condition to be alleviated. It is to be further understood that for any particular subject, specific dosage regimens should be adjusted over time according to the individual need and the professional judgment of the person administering or supervising the administration of the compositions, and that dosage ranges set forth herein are exemplary only and are not intended to limit the scope or practice of the claimed composition.

The amount of active compound in the composition may vary according to factors such as the disease state, age, sex, and weight of the individual, each of which may affect the amount of natural β -AP in the individual. Dosage regimens may be adjusted to provide the optimum therapeutic response. For example, a single bolus may be administered, several divided doses may be administered over time or the dose may be proportionally reduced or increased as indicated by the exigencies of the therapeutic situation. It is especially advantageous to formulate parenteral compositions in dosage unit form for ease of administration and uniformity of dosage. Dosage unit form as used herein refers to physically discrete units suited as unitary dosages for the mammalian subjects to be treated; each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active compound calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect in association with the required pharmaceutical carrier. The specification for the dosage unit forms of the invention are dictated by and directly dependent on (a) the unique characteristics of the active compound and the particular therapeutic effect to be achieved, and (b) the limitations

inherent in the art of compounding such an active compound for the treatment of sensitivity in individuals.

As used herein "pharmaceutically acceptable carrier" includes any and all solvents, dispersion media, coatings, antibacterial and antifungal agents, isotonic and absorption delaying agents, and the like that are physiologically compatible. In one embodiment, the carrier is suitable for parenteral administration. Preferably, the carrier is suitable for administration into the central nervous system (e.g., intraspinally or intracerebrally). Alternatively, the carrier can be suitable for intravenous, intraperitoneal or intramuscular administration. In another embodiment, the carrier is suitable for oral administration. Pharmaceutically acceptable carriers include sterile aqueous solutions or dispersions and sterile powders for the extemporaneous preparation of sterile injectable solutions or dispersion. The use of such media and agents for pharmaceutically active substances is well known in the art. Except insofar as any conventional media or agent is incompatible with the active compound, use thereof in the pharmaceutical compositions of the invention is contemplated. Supplementary active compounds can also be incorporated into the compositions.

Therapeutic compositions typically must be sterile and stable under the conditions of manufacture and storage. The composition can be formulated as a solution, microemulsion, liposome, or other ordered structure suitable to high drug concentration. The carrier can be a solvent or dispersion medium containing, for example, water, ethanol, polyol (for example, glycerol, propylene glycol, and liquid polyethyleneglycol, and the like), and suitable mixtures thereof. The proper fluidity can be maintained, for example, by the use of a coating such as lecithin, by the maintenance of the required particle size in the case of dispersion and by the use of surfactants. In many cases, it will be preferable to include isotonic agents, for example, sugars, polyalcohols such as manitol, sorbitol, or sodium chloride in the composition. Prolonged absorption of the injectable compositions can be brought about by including in the composition an agent which delays absorption, for example, monostearate salts and gelatin. Moreover, the modulators can be administered in a time release formulation, for example in a composition which includes a slow release polymer. The active compounds can be prepared with carriers that will protect the compound against rapid release, such as a controlled release formulation,

- 43 -

including implants and microencapsulated delivery systems. Biodegradable, biocompatible polymers can be used, such as ethylene vinyl acetate, polyanhydrides, polyglycolic acid, collagen, polyorthoesters, polylactic acid and polylactic, polyglycolic copolymers (PLG). Many methods for the preparation of such formulations are patented 5 or generally known to those skilled in the art.

Sterile injectable solutions can be prepared by incorporating the active compound (e.g., β -amyloid modulator) in the required amount in an appropriate solvent with one or a combination of ingredients enumerated above, as required, followed by filtered sterilization. Generally, dispersions are prepared by incorporating the active 10 compound into a sterile vehicle which contains a basic dispersion medium and the required other ingredients from those enumerated above. In the case of sterile powders for the preparation of sterile injectable solutions, the preferred methods of preparation are vacuum drying and freeze-drying which yields a powder of the active ingredient plus any additional desired ingredient from a previously sterile-filtered solution thereof.

15 A modulator compound of the invention can be formulated with one or more additional compounds that enhance the solubility of the modulator compound. Preferred compounds to be added to formulations to enhance the solubility of the modulators are cyclodextrin derivatives, preferably hydroxypropyl- γ -cyclodextrin. Drug delivery vehicles containing a cyclodextrin derivative for delivery of peptides to the central 20 nervous system are described in Bodor, N., *et al.* (1992) *Science* 257:1698-1700. For the β -amyloid modulators described herein, inclusion in the formulation of hydroxypropyl- γ -cyclodextrin at a concentration 50-200 mM increases the aqueous 25 solubility of the compounds. In addition to increased solubility, inclusion of a cyclodextrin derivative in the formulation may have other beneficial effects, since β -cyclodextrin itself has been reported to interact with the A β peptide and inhibit fibril formation *in vitro* (Camilleri, P., *et al.* (1994) *FEBS Letters* 341:256-258. Accordingly, use of a modulator compound of the invention in combination with a cyclodextrin derivative may result in greater inhibition of A β aggregation than use of the modulator alone. Chemical modifications of cyclodextrins are known in the art (Hanessian, S., *et* 30 *al.* (1995) *J. Org. Chem.* 60:4786-4797). In addition to use as an additive in a

pharmaceutical composition containing a modulator of the invention, cyclodextrin derivatives may also be useful as modifying groups and, accordingly, may also be covalently coupled to an A β peptide compound to form a modulator compound of the invention.

5 Another preferred formulation for the modulator compounds to enhance brain uptake comprises the detergent Tween-80, polyethylene glycol (PEG) and ethanol in a saline solution. A non-limiting example of such a preferred formulation is 0.16% Tween-80, 1.3% PEG-3000 and 2% ethanol in saline.

In another embodiment, a pharmaceutical composition comprising a modulator 10 of the invention is formulated such that the modulator is transported across the blood-brain barrier (BBB). Various strategies known in the art for increasing transport across the BBB can be adapted to the modulators of the invention to thereby enhance transport of the modulators across the BBB (for reviews of such strategies, see e.g., Pardridge, W.M. (1994) *Trends in Biotechnol.* 12:239-245; Van Bree, J.B. *et al.* (1993) *Pharm. 15 World Sci.* 15:2-9; and Pardridge, W.M. *et al.* (1992) *Pharmacol. Toxicol.* 71:3-10). In one approach, the modulator is chemically modified to form a prodrug with enhanced transmembrane transport. Suitable chemical modifications include covalent linking of a fatty acid to the modulator through an amide or ester linkage (see e.g., U.S. Patent 4,933,324 and PCT Publication WO 89/07938, both by Shashoua; U.S. Patent 5,284,876 20 by Hesse *et al.*; Toth, I. *et al.* (1994) *J. Drug Target.* 2:217-239; and Shashoua, V.E. *et al.* (1984) *J. Med. Chem.* 27:659-664) and glycating the modulator (see e.g., U.S. Patent 5,260,308 by Poduslo *et al.*). Also, N-acylamino acid derivatives may be used in a modulator to form a "lipidic" prodrug (see e.g., 5,112,863 by Hashimoto *et al.*).

In another approach for enhancing transport across the BBB, a peptidic or 25 peptidomimetic modulator is conjugated to a second peptide or protein, thereby forming a chimeric protein, wherein the second peptide or protein undergoes absorptive-mediated or receptor-mediated transcytosis through the BBB. Accordingly, by coupling the modulator to this second peptide or protein, the chimeric protein is transported across the BBB. The second peptide or protein can be a ligand for a brain capillary endothelial 30 cell receptor ligand. For example, a preferred ligand is a monoclonal antibody that specifically binds to the transferrin receptor on brain capillary endothelial cells (see e.g.,

U.S. Patents 5,182,107 and 5,154,924 and PCT Publications WO 93/10819 and WO 95/02421, all by Friden *et al.*). Other suitable peptides or proteins that can mediate transport across the BBB include histones (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patent 4,902,505 by Pardridge and Schimmel) and ligands such as biotin, folate, niacin, pantothenic acid, riboflavin, 5 thiamin, pyridoxal and ascorbic acid (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patents 5,416,016 and 5,108,921, both by Heinstein). Additionally, the glucose transporter GLUT-1 has been reported to transport glycopeptides (L-serinyl- β -D-glucoside analogues of [Met5]enkephalin) across the BBB (Polt, R. *et al.* (1994) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:7114-1778). Accordingly, a modulator compound can be coupled to such a glycopeptide to target the modulator to 10 the GLUT-1 glucose transporter. For example, a modulator compound which is modified at its amino terminus with the modifying group Aic (3-(*O*-aminoethyl-*iso*)-cholyl, a derivative of cholic acid having a free amino group) can be coupled to a glycopeptide through the amino group of Aic by standard methods. Chimeric proteins can be formed by recombinant DNA methods (*e.g.*, by formation of a chimeric gene 15 encoding a fusion protein) or by chemical crosslinking of the modulator to the second peptide or protein to form a chimeric protein. Numerous chemical crosslinking agents are known in the (*e.g.*, commercially available from Pierce, Rockford IL). A crosslinking agent can be chosen which allows for high yield coupling of the modulator to the second peptide or protein and for subsequent cleavage of the linker to release 20 bioactive modulator. For example, a biotin-avidin-based linker system may be used.

In yet another approach for enhancing transport across the BBB, the modulator is encapsulated in a carrier vector which mediates transport across the BBB. For example, the modulator can be encapsulated in a liposome, such as a positively charged unilamellar liposome (see *e.g.*, PCT Publications WO 88/07851 and WO 88/07852, both 25 by Faden) or in polymeric microspheres (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patent 5,413,797 by Khan *et al.*, U.S. Patent 5,271,961 by Mathiowitz *et al.* and 5,019,400 by Gombotz *et al.*). Moreover, the carrier vector can be modified to target it for transport across the BBB. For example, the carrier vector (*e.g.*, liposome) can be covalently modified with a molecule which is actively transported across the BBB or with a ligand for brain 30 endothelial cell receptors, such as a monoclonal antibody that specifically binds to

transferrin receptors (see *e.g.*, PCT Publications WO 91/04014 by Collins *et al.* and WO 94/02178 by Greig *et al.*).

In still another approach to enhancing transport of the modulator across the BBB, the modulator is coadministered with another agent which functions to permeabilize the
5 BBB. Examples of such BBB "permeabilizers" include bradykinin and bradykinin agonists (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patent 5,112,596 by Malfroy-Camine) and peptidic compounds disclosed in U.S. Patent 5,268,164 by Kozarich *et al.*

Assays that measure the *in vitro* stability of the modulator compounds in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and the degree of brain uptake of the modulator compounds in
10 animal models can be used as predictors of *in vivo* efficacy of the compounds. Suitable assays for measuring CSF stability and brain uptake are described in Examples 7 and 8, respectively.

A modulator compound of the invention can be formulated into a pharmaceutical composition wherein the modulator is the only active compound or, alternatively, the
15 pharmaceutical composition can contain additional active compounds. For example, two or more modulator compounds may be used in combination. Moreover, a modulator compound of the invention can be combined with one or more other agents that have anti-amyloidogenic properties. For example, a modulator compound can be combined with the non-specific cholinesterase inhibitor tacrine (COGNEX®, Parke-
20 Davis).

In another embodiment, a pharmaceutical composition of the invention is provided as a packaged formulation. The packaged formulation may include a pharmaceutical composition of the invention in a container and printed instructions for administration of the composition for treating a subject having a disorder associated with
25 β-amyloidosis, *e.g.* Alzheimer's disease.

VI. Methods of Using Aβ Modulators

Another aspect of the invention pertains to methods for altering the aggregation or inhibiting the neurotoxicity of natural β-amyloid peptides. In the methods of the
30 invention, natural β amyloid peptides are contacted with a β amyloid modulator such

that the aggregation of the natural β amyloid peptides is altered or the neurotoxicity of the natural β amyloid peptides is inhibited. In a preferred embodiment, the modulator inhibits aggregation of the natural β amyloid peptides. In another embodiment, the modulator promotes aggregation of the natural β amyloid peptides. Preferably, 5 aggregation of a molar excess amount of β -AP, relative to the amount of modulator, is altered upon contact with the modulator.

In the method of the invention, natural β amyloid peptides can be contacted with a modulator either *in vitro* or *in vivo*. Thus, the term "contacted with" is intended to encompass both incubation of a modulator with a natural β -AP preparation *in vitro* and 10 delivery of the modulator to a site *in vivo* where natural β -AP is present. Since the modulator compound interacts with natural β -AP, the modulator compounds can be used to detect natural β -AP, either *in vitro* or *in vivo*. Accordingly, one use of the modulator compounds of the invention is as diagnostic agents to detect the presence of natural β -AP, either in a biological sample or *in vivo* in a subject. Furthermore, detection of 15 natural β -AP utilizing a modulator compound of the invention further can be used to diagnose amyloidosis in a subject. Additionally, since the modulator compounds of the invention disrupt β -AP aggregation and inhibit β -AP neurotoxicity, the modulator compounds also are useful in the treatment of disorders associated with β -amyloidosis, either prophylactically or therapeutically. Accordingly, another use of the modulator 20 compounds of the invention is as therapeutic agents to alter aggregation and/or neurotoxicity of natural β -AP.

In one embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention is used *in vitro*, for example to detect and quantitate natural β -AP in sample (e.g., a sample of biological fluid). To aid in detection, the modulator compound can be modified with a detectable 25 substance. The source of natural β -AP used in the method can be, for example, a sample of cerebrospinal fluid (e.g., from an AD patient, an adult susceptible to AD due to family history, or a normal adult). The natural β -AP sample is contacted with a modulator of the invention and aggregation of the β -AP is measured, such as by the assays described in Example 2. The degree of aggregation of the β -AP sample can then be compared to

that of a control sample(s) of a known concentration of β -AP, similarly contacted with the modulator and the results can be used as an indication of whether a subject is susceptible to or has a disorder associated with β -amyloidosis. Moreover, β -AP can be detected by detecting a modulating group incorporated into the modulator. For example, 5 modulators incorporating a biotin compound as described herein (e.g., an amino-terminally biotinylated β -AP peptide) can be detected using a streptavidin or avidin probe which is labeled with a detectable substance (e.g., an enzyme, such as peroxidase).

In another embodiment, a modulator compound of the invention is used *in vivo* to detect, and, if desired, quantitate, natural β -AP deposition in a subject, for example to 10 aid in the diagnosis of β amyloidosis in the subject. To aid in detection, the modulator compound can be modified with a detectable substance, preferably ^{99m}Tc or radioactive iodine (described further above), which can be detected *in vivo* in a subject. The labeled β -amyloid modulator compound is administered to the subject and, after sufficient time to allow accumulation of the modulator at sites of amyloid deposition, the labeled 15 modulator compound is detected by standard imaging techniques. The radioactive signal generated by the labeled compound can be directly detected (e.g., whole body counting), or alternatively, the radioactive signal can be converted into an image on an autoradiograph or on a computer screen to allow for imaging of amyloid deposits in the subject. Methods for imaging amyloidosis using radiolabeled proteins are known in the 20 art. For example, serum amyloid P component (SAP), radiolabeled with either ^{123}I or ^{99m}Tc , has been used to image systemic amyloidosis (see e.g., Hawkins, P.N. and Pepys, M.B. (1995) *Eur. J. Nucl. Med.* 22:595-599). Of the various isotopes of radioactive iodine, preferably ^{123}I (half-life = 13.2 hours) is used for whole body scintigraphy, ^{124}I (half life = 4 days) is used for positron emission tomography (PET), 25 ^{125}I (half life = 60 days) is used for metabolic turnover studies and ^{131}I (half life = 8 days) is used for whole body counting and delayed low resolution imaging studies. Analogous to studies using radiolabeled SAP, a labeled modulator compound of the invention can be delivered to a subject by an appropriate route (e.g., intravenously, intraspinally, intracerebrally) in a single bolus, for example containing 100 μg of labeled 30 compound carrying approximately 180 MBq of radioactivity.

The invention provides a method for detecting the presence or absence of natural β -amyloid peptides in a biological sample, comprising contacting a biological sample with a compound of the invention and detecting the compound bound to natural β -amyloid peptides to thereby detect the presence or absence of natural β -amyloid peptides 5 in the biological sample. In one embodiment, the β -amyloid modulator compound and the biological sample are contacted *in vitro*. In another embodiment, the β -amyloid modulator compound is contacted with the biological sample by administering the β -amyloid modulator compound to a subject. For *in vivo* administration, preferably the compound is labeled with radioactive technetium or radioactive iodine.

10 The invention also provides a method for detecting natural β -amyloid peptides to facilitate diagnosis of a β -amyloidogenic disease, comprising contacting a biological sample with the compound of the invention and detecting the compound bound to natural β -amyloid peptides to facilitate diagnosis of a β -amyloidogenic disease. In one embodiment, the β -amyloid modulator compound and the biological sample are 15 contacted *in vitro*. In another embodiment, the β -amyloid modulator compound is contacted with the biological sample by administering the β -amyloid modulator compound to a subject. For *in vivo* administration, preferably the compound is labeled with radioactive technetium or radioactive iodine. Preferably, use of the method facilitates diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease.

20 In another embodiment, the invention provides a method for altering natural β -AP aggregation or inhibiting β -AP neurotoxicity, which can be used prophylactically or therapeutically in the treatment or prevention of disorders associated with β amyloidosis, *e.g.*, Alzheimer's Disease. Modulator compounds of the invention can reduce the toxicity of natural β -AP aggregates to cultured neuronal cells. Moreover, the 25 modulators also have the ability to reduce the neurotoxicity of preformed A β fibrils. Accordingly, the modulator compounds of the invention can be used to inhibit or prevent the formation of neurotoxic A β fibrils in subjects (*e.g.*, prophylactically in a subject predisposed to β -amyloid deposition) and can be used to reverse β -amyloidosis therapeutically in subjects already exhibiting β -amyloid deposition.

A modulator of the invention is contacted with natural β amyloid peptides present in a subject (e.g., in the cerebrospinal fluid or cerebrum of the subject) to thereby alter the aggregation of the natural β -AP and/or inhibit the neurotoxicity of the natural β -APs. A modulator compound alone can be administered to the subject, or

5 alternatively, the modulator compound can be administered in combination with other therapeutically active agents (e.g., as discussed above in subsection IV). When combination therapy is employed, the therapeutic agents can be coadministered in a single pharmaceutical composition, coadministered in separate pharmaceutical compositions or administered sequentially.

10 The modulator may be administered to a subject by any suitable route effective for inhibiting natural β -AP aggregation in the subject, although in a particularly preferred embodiment, the modulator is administered parenterally, most preferably to the central nervous system of the subject. Possible routes of CNS administration include intraspinal administration and intracerebral administration (e.g., intracerebrovascular administration). Alternatively, the compound can be administered, for example, orally, 15 intraperitoneally, intravenously or intramuscularly. For non-CNS administration routes, the compound can be administered in a formulation which allows for transport across the BBB. Certain modulators may be transported across the BBB without any additional further modification whereas others may need further modification as described above in

20 subsection IV.

Suitable modes and devices for delivery of therapeutic compounds to the CNS of a subject are known in the art, including cerebrovascular reservoirs (e.g., Ommaya or Rikker reservoirs; see e.g., Raney, J.P. *et al.* (1988) *J. Neurosci. Nurs.* 20:23-29; Sundaresan, N. *et al.* (1989) *Oncology* 3:15-22), catheters for intrathecal delivery (e.g., 25 Port-a-Cath, Y-catheters and the like; see e.g., Plummer, J.L. (1991) *Pain* 44:215-220; Yaksh, T.L. *et al.* (1986) *Pharmacol. Biochem. Behav.* 25:483-485), injectable intrathecal reservoirs (e.g., Spinalgesic; see e.g., Brazenor, G.A. (1987) *Neurosurgery* 21:484-491), implantable infusion pump systems (e.g., Infusaid; see e.g., Zierski, J. *et al.* (1988) *Acta Neurochem. Suppl.* 43:94-99; Kanoff, R.B. (1994) *J. Am. Osteopath. Assoc.* 94:487-493) and osmotic pumps (sold by Alza Corporation). A particularly

preferred mode of administration is via an implantable, externally programmable infusion pump. Suitable infusion pump systems and reservoir systems are also described in U.S. Patent No. 5, 368,562 by Blomquist and U.S. Patent No. 4,731,058 by Doan, developed by Pharmacia Deltec Inc.

5 The method of the invention for altering β -AP aggregation *in vivo*, and in particular for inhibiting β -AP aggregation, can be used therapeutically in diseases associated with abnormal β amyloid aggregation and deposition to thereby slow the rate of β amyloid deposition and/or lessen the degree of β amyloid deposition, thereby ameliorating the course of the disease. In a preferred embodiment, the method is used to
10 treat Alzheimer's disease (e.g., sporadic or familial AD, including both individuals exhibiting symptoms of AD and individuals susceptible to familial AD). The method can also be used prophylactically or therapeutically to treat other clinical occurrences of β amyloid deposition, such as in Down's syndrome individuals and in patients with hereditary cerebral hemorrhage with amyloidosis-Dutch-type (HCHWA-D). While
15 inhibition of β -AP aggregation is a preferred therapeutic method, modulators that promote β -AP aggregation may also be useful therapeutically by allowing for the sequestration of β -AP at sites that do not lead to neurological impairment.

Additionally, abnormal accumulation of β -amyloid precursor protein in muscle fibers has been implicated in the pathology of sporadic inclusion body myositis (IBM) 20 (Askana, V. et al. (1996) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93:1314-1319; Askanas, V. et al. (1995) *Current Opinion in Rheumatology* 7:486-496). Accordingly, the modulators of the invention can be used prophylactically or therapeutically in the treatment of disorders in which β -AP, or APP, is abnormally deposited at non-neurological locations, such as treatment of IBM by delivery of the modulators to muscle fibers.

25 This invention is further illustrated by the following examples which should not be construed as limiting. A modulator's ability to alter the aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptide and/or inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptide in the assays described below are predictive of the modulator's ability to perform the same function *in vivo*.

This invention is further illustrated by the following examples which should not be construed as limiting. The contents of all references, patents and published patent applications cited throughout this application, as well as the Figures, are hereby incorporated by reference.

5

EXAMPLE 1: **Preparation of β -amyloid Modulator Compounds
Comprising D-Amino Acids**

β -amyloid modulators comprising D-amino acids can be prepared by solid-phase 10 peptide synthesis, for example using an N^{α} -9-fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl (FMOC)-based protection strategy as follows. Starting with 2.5 mmoles of FMOC-D-Val-Wang resin, sequential additions of each amino acid are performed using a four-fold excess of protected amino acids, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBr) and diisopropyl carbodiimide (DIC). Recouplings are performed when necessary as determined by ninhydrin testing 15 of the resin after coupling. Each synthesis cycle is minimally described by a three minute deprotection (25 % piperidine/N-methyl-pyrrolidone (NMP)), a 15 minute deprotection, five one minute NMP washes, a 60 minute coupling cycle, five NMP washes and a ninhydrin test. For N-terminal modification, an N-terminal modifying reagent is substituted for an FMOC-D-amino acid and coupled to a 700 mg portion of 20 the fully assembled peptide-resin by the above protocol. The peptide is removed from the resin by treatment with trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) (82.5 %), water (5 %), thioanisole (5 %), phenol (5 %), ethanedithiol (2.5 %) for two hours followed by precipitation of the peptide in cold ether. The solid is pelleted by centrifugation (2400 rpm x 10 min.), and the ether decanted. The solid is resuspended in ether, pelleted and decanted a second 25 time. The solid is dissolved in 10 % acetic acid and lyophilized to dryness. For preparative purification and subsequent analytical characterization, 60 mg of the solid is dissolved in 25 % acetonitrile (ACN) /0.1 % TFA and applied to a C18 reversed phase high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) column.

Alternatively, β -amyloid modulators comprising D-amino acids can be prepared 30 on a Rainin PS3 peptide synthesizer using an automated protocol established by the

manufacturer for a 0.25 mmole scale synthesis. Couplings are performed using 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyl-uronium-hexafluoro-phosphate (HBTU) / FMOC-D-amino acid in four fold excess in 0.4 M N-methylmorpholine (NMM) / dimethylformamide (DMF) for 60 minutes. In between couplings, the FMOC group is 5 removed by reaction with 20% piperidine / DMF for 20 minutes. The peptide is removed from the resin by treatment with 95% TFA/water for one hour and precipitated with ether. The pellet is resuspended in 40% acetonitrile/water and lyophilized. When necessary, the material was purified by preparative HPLC using 15%-50% acetonitrile over 60 minutes on a Vydac C18 column (21 x 250 mm).

10 Various *N*-terminally modified β -amyloid modulator compounds can be synthesized using standard methods. Fully-protected resin-bound peptides are prepared as described above on an appropriate resin to eventually afford carboxyl terminal peptide acids. Small portions of each peptide resin (e.g., 13-20 μ moles) are aliquoted into separate reaction vessels. The *N*-terminal FMOC protecting group of each sample is 15 removed in the standard manner with 20 % piperidine in NMM followed by extensive washing with DMF. The unprotected *N*-terminal α -amino group of each peptide-resin sample can be modified using one of the following methods:

20 Method A, coupling of modifying reagents containing free carboxylic acid groups: The modifying reagent (five equivalents) is predissolved in NMP, DMSO or a mixture of these two solvents. HOBT and DIC (five equivalents of each reagent) are added to the dissolved modifier and the resulting solution is added to one equivalent of free-amino peptide-resin. Coupling is allowed to proceed overnight, followed by 25 washing. If a ninhydrin test on a small sample of peptide-resin shows that coupling is not complete, the coupling is repeated using 1-hydroxy-7-azabenzotriazole (HOAt) in place of HOBr.

30 Method B, coupling of modifying reagents obtained in preactivated forms: The modifying reagent (five equivalents) is predissolved in NMP, DMSO or a mixture of these two solvents and added to one equivalent of peptide-resin. Diisopropylethylamine (DIEA; six equivalents) is added to the suspension of activated modifier and peptide-resin. Coupling is allowed to proceed overnight, followed by washing. If a ninhydrin

test on a small sample of peptide-resin shows that coupling is not complete, the coupling is repeated.

After the second coupling (if required) the *N*-terminally modified peptide-resins are dried at reduced pressure and cleaved from the resin with removal of side-chain protecting groups as described above. Analytical reversed-phase HPLC is used to confirm that a major product is present in the resulting crude peptides, which are purified using Millipore Sep-Pak cartridges or preparative reverse-phase HPLC. Mass spectrometry or high-field nuclear magnetic resonance spectrometry is used to confirm the presence of the desired compound in the product.

10 Method C, preparation of N-terminal-alkyl substituted peptides using bromoacetyl peptide intermediates: A resin-bound peptide can be coupled to bromoacetic acid (12 equivalents) with 1,3-diisopropylcarbodiimide (DIC) (13 equivalents) in DMF. The resulting bromoacetyl substituted peptide can be modified upon reaction with primary or secondary amines including, methylamine, ethylamine, 15 propylamine, isopropylamine and piperidine. The reaction is performed in 60% DMSO/DMF and is typically complete after 24 hours.

15 Method D, preparation of N-terminal-alkyl substituted peptides via reductive alkylation: After the peptide is dissolved (or partially dissolved) in water containing 0-10 % methanol, it is reacted with an aldehyde (5-8 equivalents) and 20 sodiumcyanoborohydride (10-16 equivalents). The number of equivalents can be adjusted for the type of aldehyde and the degree of substitution desired. The pH of the resulting solution is adjusted to 2 with 1 M HCl and maintained at 2 for one hour. The reaction is monitored by hplc and is usually completed with two hours. The reaction mix is concentrated at room temperature and hplc purified.

25 Method E, C-terminal modification: The peptide was synthesized on 2-chlorotriyl resin using standard Fmoc chemistry however the final D-amino acid group coupled was Boc protected. The peptide was removed from the resin with 8/1/1 dichloromethane (DCM) / acetic acid / trifluoroethanol and the mixture concentrated. The peptide residue was dissolved in 20 % acetonitrile, frozen and lyophilized 30 overnight. The crude BOC protected peptide acid was coupled under basic conditions (pH=11, adjusted with DIEA) to an amine with one equivalent each of 1-hydroxy-7-

azobenzotriazole(HOAt) and DIC. The reaction was completed after stirring overnight and the peptide precipitated with water. The BOC group was cleaved upon reaction with 25 % TFA in DCM for one hour and the peptide HPLC purified.

5 **EXAMPLE 2:**

β-Amyloid Aggregation Assays

The ability of β-amyloid modulator compounds to modulate (*e.g.*, inhibit or promote) the aggregation of natural β-AP when combined with the natural β-AP can be examined in one or both of the aggregation assays described below. Natural β-AP (β-10 AP₁₋₄₀) for use in the aggregation assays is commercially available from Bachem (Torrance, CA).

A. Nucleation Assay

The nucleation assay is employed to determine the ability of test compounds to alter (*e.g.* inhibit) the early events in formation of β-AP fibers from monomeric β-AP. Characteristic of a nucleated polymerization mechanism, a lag time is observed prior to nucleation, after which the peptide rapidly forms fibers as reflected in a linear rise in turbidity. The time delay before polymerization of β-AP monomer can be quantified as well as the extent of formation of insoluble fiber by light scattering (turbidity).
15 Polymerization reaches equilibrium when the maximum turbidity reaches a plateau. The turbidity of a solution of natural β-AP in the absence or presence of various concentrations of a β-amyloid modulator compound is determined by measuring the apparent absorbance of the solution at 405nm (A_{405 nm}) over time. The threshold of sensitivity for the measurement of turbidity is in the range of 15-20 μM β-AP. A
20 decrease in turbidity over time in the presence of the modulator, as compared to the turbidity in the absence of the modulator, indicates that the modulator inhibits formation of β-AP fibers from monomeric β-AP. This assay can be performed using stirring or shaking to accelerate polymerization, thereby increasing the speed of the assay.
25 Moreover the assay can be adapted to a 96-well plate format to screen multiple compounds.
30

To perform the nucleation assay, first A β ₁₋₄₀ peptide is dissolved in HFIP (1,1,1,3,3,3-Hexafluoro-2-propanol; Aldrich 10,522-8) at a concentration of 2 mg peptide/ml and incubated at room temperature for 30 min. HFIP-solubilized peptide is sonicated in a waterbath sonicator for 5 min at highest setting, then evaporated to dryness under a stream of argon. The peptide film is resuspended in anhydrous dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) at a concentration of 6.9 mg/ml (25x concentration), sonicated for 5 min as before, then filtered through a 0.2 micron nylon syringe filter (VWR cat. No. 28196-050). Test compounds are dissolved in DMSO at a 100x concentration. Four volumes of 25x A β ₁₋₄₀ peptide in DMSO are combined with one volume of test compound in DMSO in a glass vial, and mixed to produce a 1:1 molar ratio of A β peptide to test compound. For different molar ratios, test compounds are diluted with DMSO prior to addition to A β ₁₋₄₀, in order to keep the final DMSO and A β ₁₋₄₀ concentrations constant. Control samples do not contain the test compound. Ten microliters of the mixture is then added to the bottom of a well of a Corning Costar ultra low binding 96-well plate (Corning Costar, Cambridge MA; cat. No. 2500). Ninety microliters of water is added to the well, the plate is shaken on a rotary shaker at a constant speed at room temperature for 30 seconds, an additional 100 μ l of 2x PTL buffer (20 mM NaH₂PO₄, 300 mM NaCl, pH 7.4) is added to the well, the plate is reshaken for 30 seconds and a baseline (t=0) turbidity reading is taken by measuring the apparent absorbance at 405 nm using a Bio-Rad Model 450 Microplate Reader. The plate is then returned to the shaker and shaken continuously for 5 hours. Turbidity readings are taken at 15 minute intervals.

β -amyloid aggregation in the absence of any modulators results in enhanced turbidity of the natural β -AP solution (*i.e.*, an increase in the apparent absorbance at 405 nm over time). Accordingly, a solution including an effective inhibitory modulator compound exhibits reduced turbidity as compared to the control sample without the modulator compound (*i.e.*, less apparent absorbance at 405 nm over time as compared to the control sample).

- 57 -

Alternative to use of turbidity to quantitate β -amyloid aggregation, fluorescence of thioflavin T (Th-T) also can be used to quantitate β -amyloid aggregation in the nucleation assay (use of Th-T fluorescence for quantitating β -amyloid aggregation is described further below for the seeded extension assay).

5

B. Fibril Binding Assay

The following materials are needed for the Fibril binding assay: Millipore multifilter apparatus; 12 x 75 glass tubes; GF/F 25 mm glass filters; PBS/0.1% tween 20 at 4°C (PBST); A β fibrils; radioactive compound; nonradioactive compound; Eppendorf 10 repeat pipettor with tips; labels; forceps; and vacuum.

In this assay, each sample is run in triplicate. The "aged" A β fibril is first prepared approximately 8 days in advance by aging 1 ml aliquots of a 200 μ M A β 1-40 peptide solution in 4%DMSO/PBS for 8 days at 37°C with rocking. Such "aged" A β peptide can be tested directly on cells or frozen at -80°C.

15 The 200 μ M A β fibril is diluted in PBST to yield a 4 μ M solution (320 μ l in 16 ml PBST). 100 μ L aliquots of this solution are added per tube with the repeat pipettor.

The β -amyloid modulator compounds of the invention are prepared at 2 μ M – 200 fM dilutions as follows:

Dilute a 5 mM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 1.6667 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

20 Dilute a 1.667 mM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 0.5556 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 555.556 μ M stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 185.19 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

25 Dilute a 185.185 μ M stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 61.728 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 61.728 μ M stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 20.576 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 20.576 μ M stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 6.8587 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

- 58 -

Dilute a 6.859 μ M stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 2.2862 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 2.286 μ M stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 0.7621 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

10 Dilute a 762.079 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 254.03 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

5 Dilute a 254.026 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 84.675 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 84.675 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 28.225 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 28.225 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 9.4084 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

10 Dilute a 9.408 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 3.1361 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

15 Dilute a 3.136 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 1.0454 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 1.045 nM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 0.3485 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

15 Dilute a 348.459 pM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 116.15 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute a 116.153 pM stock 1:3 in DMSO to yield a 38.718 stock (200 μ l in 400 μ l DMSO).

Dilute 185.185 μ M stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 7.4074 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

20 20 Dilute 61.728 μ M stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 2.4691 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 20.576 μ M stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 0.823 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 6.859 μ M stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 0.2743 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 2.286 μ M stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 0.0914 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 762.079 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 30.483 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

25 25 Dilute 254.026 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 10.161 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 84.675 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 3.387 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 28.225 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 1.129 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 9.408 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 0.3763 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 3.136 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 0.1254 (50 μ L in 1.2 mL PBST)

30 Dilute 1.045 nM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 0.0418 (50 µL in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 348.459 pM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 13.938 (50 µL in 1.2 mL PBST)

Dilute 116.153 pM stock 1:25 in PBST to yield 4.6461 (50 µL in 1.2 mL PBST)

The β-amyloid modulator compound (200µL) is then added to the appropriate
5 tube containing the Aβ fibril.

The radioactively labeled β-amyloid modulator compound is prepared using standard radioactive safety protocols by making a dilution into a PBS/0.1% tween-20 solution such that there is a final concentration of 20,000 dpm per 100 µL. 100 µl aliquots of the radioactively labeled β-amyloid modulator compound are added per
10 tube using the repeat pipettor. The samples are covered with parafilm and incubated at 37 °C inside plastic radioactivity bags overnight.

To filter the samples, the filters are pre-wetted in a small volume of PBST. Two Millipore multifiltration apparati are set with GF/F filters in each filtration slot following the instructions from the manufacturer. The samples are removed from the 37
15 °C incubator and each sample is filtered using a small volume (~5 ml) of cold PBST buffer. The sample tube is then washed with two additional 5 mL volumes of cold PBST buffer. The vacuum is allowed to pull to a semi dry filter for approximately 2 minutes after adding the last sample and the filter is transferred to a labelled tube for iodination counting. One minute counts are recorded, the data is plotted, and the Prism
20 program (GraphPAD) is used to analyze the graph, according to the manufacturer's instructions.

C. Seeded Extension Assay

The seeded extension assay can be employed to measure the rate of Aβ fiber
25 formed in a solution of Aβ monomer following addition of polymeric Aβ fiber "seed". The ability of test compounds to prevent further deposition of monomeric Aβ to previously deposited amyloid is determined using a direct indicator of β-sheet formation using fluorescence. In contrast with the nucleation assay, the addition of seed provides immediate nucleation and continued growth of preformed fibrils without the need for
30 continuous mixing, and thus results in the absence of a lag time before polymerization

starts. Since this assay uses static polymerization conditions, the activity of positive compounds in the nucleation assay can be confirmed in this second assay under different conditions and with an additional probe of amyloid structure.

In the seeded extension assay, monomeric A β ₁₋₄₀ is incubated in the presence of 5 a "seed" nucleus (approximately ten mole percent of A β that has been previously allowed to polymerize under controlled static conditions). Samples of the solution are then diluted in thioflavin T (Th-T). The polymer-specific association of Th-T with A β produces a fluorescent complex that allows the measurement of the extent of fibril formation (Levine, H. (1993) *Protein Science* 2:404-410). In particular, association of 10 Th-T with aggregated β -AP, but not monomeric or loosely associated β -AP, gives rise to a new excitation (ex) maximum at 450 nm and an enhanced emission (em) at 482 nm, compared to the 385 nm (ex) and 445 nm (em) for the free dye. Small aliquots of the polymerization mixture contain sufficient fibril to be mixed with Th-T to allow the monitoring of the reaction mixture by repeated sampling. A linear growth curve is 15 observed in the presence of excess monomer. The formation of thioflavin T responsive β -sheet fibrils parallels the increase in turbidity observed using the nucleation assay.

A solution of A β monomer for use in the seeded extension assay is prepared by 20 dissolving an appropriate quantity of A β ₁₋₄₀ peptide in 1/25 volume of dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO), followed by water to 1/2 volume and 1/2 volume 2x PBS (10x PBS: NaCl 137 mM, KCl 2.7 mM Na₂HPO₄ • 7H₂O 4.3 mM, KH₂PO₄ 1.4 mM pH 7.2) to a final concentration of 200 μ M. To prepare the stock seed, 1 ml of the A β monomer preparation, is incubated for approximately 8 days at 37 °C and sheared sequentially through an 18, 23, 26 and 30 gauge needle 25, 25, 50, and 100 times respectively. 2 μ l samples of the sheared material is taken for fluorescence 25 measurements after every 50 passes through the 30 gauge needle until the fluorescence units (FU) plateau (approx. 100-150x). Test compounds are prepared by dissolving an appropriate amount of test compound in 1x PBS to a final concentration of 1 mM (10x stock). If insoluble, the compound is dissolved in 1/10 volume of DMSO and diluted in 1x PBS to 1 mM. A further 1/10 dilution is also prepared to test each candidate at both 30 100 μ M and 10 μ M.

- 61 -

To perform the seeded extension assay, each sample is set up with 50 μ l of 200 μ M monomer, 125 FU sheared seed (a variable quantity dependent on the batch of seed, routinely 3-6 μ l) and 10 μ l of 10x modulator solution. The sample volume is then adjusted to a final volume of 100 μ l with 1x PBS. Two concentrations of each

5 modulator typically are tested: 100 μ M and 10 μ M, equivalent to a 1:1 and a 1:10 molar ratio of monomer to modulator. The controls include an unseeded reaction to confirm that the fresh monomer contains no seed, and a seeded reaction in the absence of any modulators, as a reference to compare against candidate modulators. The assay is incubated at 37 °C for 6 h, taking 2 μ l samples hourly for fluorescence measurements.

10 To measure fluorescence, a 2 μ l sample of A β is added to 400 μ l of Thioflavin-T solution (50 mM Potassium Phosphate 10 mM Thioflavin-T pH 7.5). The samples are vortexed and the fluorescence is read in a 0.5 ml micro quartz cuvette at EX 450 nm and EM 482 nm (Hitachi 4500 Fluorimeter).

β -amyloid aggregation results in enhanced emission of Thioflavin-T.

15 Accordingly, samples including an effective inhibitory modulator compound exhibit reduced emission as compared to control samples without the modulator compound.

EXAMPLE 3:

Analysis of β -Amyloid Modulator Compounds

20 In this example, β -amyloid modulator compounds described herein were prepared and tested for their ability to inhibit aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptide using aggregations assays as described in Example 2. The results from a first series of experiments, are summarized below in Tables I, II, and III.

TABLE I

PPI#	Nucleation assay Δ lag			Fibril binding Kd's		
	5 μM	2.5 μM	1.25 μM	cmpd	ref cmpd	ref Kd
803	<1	<1	<1			
913	1	1	1			
968	>5	>5	2			
969	>5	>5	3	1.13 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	3.7 x 10 ⁻⁹
970	>5	>5	1			
992	3	1	1	2.43 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	3.70 x 10 ⁻⁹
993	1	1	1			
1005	3	3	1			
1006	1	1	1			
*1007	4	4	3	8.64 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	1.69 x 10 ⁻⁹
#1007	1.5	1.5	1.5	6.27 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	2.75 x 10 ⁻⁹
1008				1.75 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	1.00 x 10 ⁻⁹
#1013	2	>3	2	2.47 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	1.69 x 10 ⁻⁹
1017				3.89 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	2.42 x 10 ⁻⁹
1018				7.01 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	2.42 x 10 ⁻⁹
1020				6.01 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	2.42 x 10 ⁻⁹
1022				1.50 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	1.00 x 10 ⁻⁹
1025				4.30 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	1.00 x 10 ⁻⁹
1028				4.90 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	1.00 x 10 ⁻⁹
1038				6.52 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	3.76 x 10 ⁻⁹
1039				2.44 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	3.76 x 10 ⁻⁹
1040				4.08 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	2.4 x 10 ⁻⁹
1041				1.61 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	2.4 x 10 ⁻⁹
1042				2.34 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-558	2.4 x 10 ⁻⁹
1088				3.40 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	1.93 x 10 ⁻⁹

- 63 -

1089				5.7×10^{-10}	PPI-558	3.3×10^{-9}
1093				1.02×10^{-9}	PPI-558	1.93×10^{-9}
1094				3.7×10^{-9}	PPI-558	3.5×10^{-9}
1179				6.04×10^{-10}	PPI-558	1.93×10^{-9}
1180				3.3×10^{-10}	PPI-558	3.5×10^{-9}
1261				1.12×10^{-8}	PPI-558	3.34×10^{-9}

Notes:

* means nucleation assay data was measured at 3, 1 and 0.3 μ M of compound# means nucleation assay data was measured at 2.5, 1.25 and 0.6 μ M of compound

5 TABLE II

PPI#	Nucleation assay data			Fibril binding Kd's		
	3 μ M	1 μ M	0.3 μ M	cmpd	ref cmpd	ref Kd
*1019	>2.5	>2.5	2.0	4.11×10^{-10}	PPI-558	1.69×10^{-9}
1019				5.34×10^{-10}	PPI-558	1.93×10^{-9}
1301				1.1×10^{-9}	PPI-1318	1.4×10^{-9}
1302				2.2×10^{-10}	PPI-1318	1.4×10^{-9}
1303				1.1×10^{-9}	PPI-1318	1.4×10^{-9}
1318	>5	2	1	7.7×10^{-11}	PPI-558	2.3×10^{-9}
1318				1.4×10^{-9}		
1318				6.2×10^{-11}		
1319	>5	>5	1			
1320	>5	3	1	1.4×10^{-9}	PPI-1318	6.2×10^{-11}
1321	<1	<1	<1			
1322				1.2×10^{-9}	PPI-1318	6.2×10^{-11}
1323						
1324						
1325				1.4×10^{-9}	PPI-1318	1.4×10^{-9}

- 64 -

1326				5.6 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-1318	6.2 x 10 ⁻¹¹
1327				8.2 x 10 ⁻¹⁰	PPI-1318	1.4 x 10 ⁻⁹
1328				2.4 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-1318	6.2 x 10 ⁻¹¹
1329						
*1125	>2.5	>2.5	2.0	1.27 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	2.08 x 10 ⁻⁹
1125				1.34 x 10 ⁻⁹	PPI-558	5.05 x 10 ⁻⁹
1133				3.18 x 10 ⁻⁷	PPI-558	2.08 x 10 ⁻⁹
1155				1.24 x 10 ⁻⁷	PPI-558	2.08 x 10 ⁻⁹

Notes:

* means nucleation assay data was measured at 2.5, 1.25 and 0.6 μ M of compound

The modulator compounds were evaluated in nucleation assays utilizing 5 μ M $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ and either 5 μ M, 2.5 μ M, 1.25 μ M, 3 μ M, 1 μ M, or 0.3 μ M test compound. The change in lag time (ΔLag) is presented as the ratio of the lag time observed in the presence of the test compound (at either 5 μ M, 2.5 μ M, 1.25 μ M, 3 μ M, 1 μ M, or 0.3 μ M) to the lag time of the control.

10 TABLE III

PPI #	STRUCTURE	Fibril binding Kd's cmpd
PPI-504	TFA • H-(lv-[3-I]y-fa)-NH ₂	
PPI-1181	TFA • H-(lvffl)-NH-Et	
PPI-1465	TFA • H-lvffl-NH-CH ₂ CH ₂ -NH ₂	3.6 x 10 ⁻⁹
PPI-1603	TFA • H-(GGClvffl)-NH ₂	
PPI-1604	TFA • H-(GGClvfyl)-NH ₂	
PPI-1605	TFA • H-(GGClvf-[3-I]y-l)-NH ₂	
PPI-1619	2TFA • H-LVF-NH-NH-FVL-H	3.5 x 10 ⁻⁸ (an analog of 1125)

- 65 -

PPI-1621	2TFA • H-LVF-NH-NH-fvl-H	8.7×10^{-9} (an analog of 1125)
PPI-1635	TFA • H-lff-(nvl)-l-NH ₂	1.4×10^{-9}
PPI-1636	TFA • H-lf-[pF]f-(nvl)-l-NH ₂	1.5×10^{-9}
PPI-1637	TFA • H-l-[pF]f-[pF]f-(nvl)-l-NH ₂	1.8×10^{-9}
PPI-1782	TFA•Me-lvyfl-NH ₂	
PPI-1783	TFA•H-(lvyfl)-NH ₂	
PPI-1784	TFA•Me-(lv-[p-F]f-fl)-NH ₂	2.5×10^{-9}
PPI-1785	TFA•H-(lv-[p-F]f-fl)-NH ₂	2.8×10^{-9}
PPI-1786	TFA•H-(lvf-[p-F]f-l)-NH ₂	
PPI-1787	TFA•Me-lvff-[nvl]-NH ₂	5.8×10^{-9}
PPI-1788	TFA•Me-(lvff-[nle])-NH ₂	$(\sim 4 \times 10^{-9})$ 3-point assay
PPI-1799	TFA•Me-lvffl)-OH	
PPI-1800	TFA•Me-(lvffl)-NH-OH	$(\sim 4 \times 10^{-9})$ 3-point assay
PPI-1805	TFA • H-(lv-[p-F]f-f-(nvl))-NH ₂	
PPI-1806	TFA • Me-(l-v-[p-F]f-f-(nvl))-NH ₂	
PPI 1807	TFA • H-((nvl)-v-[p-F]f-f-nvl)-NH ₂	
PPI-1818	TFA • H-(l-(nvl)-[p-F]f-f-(nvl))-NH ₂	
PPI 1819	TFA • H-((nvl)-(nvl)-[p-F]f-f-(nvl))-NH ₂	
PPI 1820	TFA • Me-(l-(nvl)-[p-F]f-f-(nvl))-NH ₂	
PPI 1827	TFA • H-(lvff-(nvl))-NH ₂	
PPI 1828	Ac-(lvffl)-NH ₂	
PPI 1829	Ac-(lvffl)-OH	
PPI 1830	TFA • H-(lv-[3-I]y-fl)-NH ₂	

(nvl) = D-norvaline

(nle) = D-norleucine

[3-I]y = 3-iodo-D-tyrosine

[p-F]f = para-fluoro-D-phenylalanine

5

PPI-1801 is the acetyl amide analog of H-LPFFD-OH that has been reported in the literature. This compound was prepared and tested for activity for comparison purposes. The results indicate that this compound binds poorly to fibrils in the assay used herein.

10

In contrast, the results shown in Tables I, II, and III, and Figure 2 demonstrate that β -amyloid modulators of the invention are effective inhibitors of $A\beta$ aggregation.

EXAMPLE 6:

Neurotoxicity Assay

15

The neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptide aggregates, in either the presence or absence of a β -amyloid modulator, can be tested in a cell-based assay using either a rat or human neuronally-derived cell line (PC-12 cells or NT-2 cells, respectively) and the viability indicator 3,(4,4-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)2,5-diphenyl-tetrazolium bromide (MTT). (See e.g., Shearman, M.S. *et al.* (1994) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:1470-1474; Hansen, M.B. *et al.* (1989) *J. Immun. Methods* 119:203-210 for a description of similar cell-based viability assays). PC-12 is a rat adrenal pheochromocytoma cell line and is available from the American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, MD (ATCC CRL 1721). MTT (commercially available from Sigma Chemical Co.) is a chromogenic substrate that is converted from yellow to blue in viable cells, which can be detected spectrophotometrically.

20

To test the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides, stock solutions of fresh $A\beta$ monomers and aged $A\beta$ aggregates are first prepared. $A\beta_{1-40}$ in 100% DMSO is prepared from lyophilized powder and immediately diluted in one half the final volume in H_2O and then one half the final volume in 2X PBS so that a final concentration of 200 μ M peptide, 4% DMSO is achieved. Peptide prepared in this way and tested

immediately on cells is referred to as "fresh" A β monomer. To prepare "aged" A β aggregates, peptide solution is placed in a 1.5 ml Eppendorf tube and incubated at 37 °C for eight days to allow fibrils to form. Such "aged" A β peptide can be tested directly on cells or frozen at -80°C. The neurotoxicity of fresh monomers and aged aggregates are

5 tested using PC12 and NT2 cells. PC12 cells are routinely cultured in Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium (DMEM) containing 10% horse serum, 5% fetal calf serum, 4mM glutamine, and 1% gentamycin. NT2 cells are routinely cultured in OPTI-MEM medium (GIBCO BRL CAT. #31985) supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum, 2 mM glutamine and 1% gentamycin. Cells are plated at 10-15,000 cells per well in 90 μ l of

10 fresh medium in a 96 -well tissue culture plate 3-4 hours prior to treatment. The fresh or aged A β peptide solutions (10 μ L) are then diluted 1:10 directly into tissue culture medium so that the final concentration is in the range of 1-10 μ M peptide. Cells are incubated in the presence of peptide without a change in media for 48 hours at 37°C.

15 For the final three hours of exposure of the cells to the β -AP preparation, MTT is added to the media to a final concentration of 1 mg/ml and incubation is continued at 37 °C. Following the two hour incubation with MTT, the media is removed and the cells are lysed in 100 μ L isopropanol/0.4N HCl with agitation. An equal volume of PBS is added to each well and the plates are agitated for an additional 10 minutes. Absorbance of each well at 570 nm is measured using a microtiter plate reader to quantitate viable cell.

20 Using this assay, the neurotoxicity of aged (5 day or 8 day) A β ₁₋₄₀ aggregates alone, but not fresh A β ₁₋₄₀ monomers alone, was confirmed. Experiments demonstrated that incubating the neuronal cells with increasing amounts of fresh A β ₁₋₄₀ monomers was not significantly toxic to the cells whereas incubating the cells with increasing amounts of 5 day or 8 day A β ₁₋₄₀ aggregates led to increasing amount of neurotoxicity.

25 The EC₅₀ for toxicity of aged A β ₁₋₄₀ aggregates was 1-2 μ M for both the PC12 cells and the NT2 cells.

To determine the effect of a β -amyloid modulator compound on the neurotoxicity of A β ₁₋₄₀ aggregates, a modulator compound is preincubated with A β ₁₋₄₀ monomers under standard nucleation assay conditions as described in Example 2 and at

30 particular time intervals post-incubation, aliquots of the β -AP/modulator solution are

- 68 -

removed and 1) the turbidity of the solution is assessed as a measure of aggregation and 2) the solution is applied to cultured neuronal cells for 48 hours at which time cell viability is assessed using MTT to determine the neurotoxicity of the solution.

Additionally, the ability of β -amyloid modulator compounds to reduce the neurotoxicity

5 of preformed A β ₁₋₄₀ aggregates can be assayed. In these experiments, A β ₁₋₄₀ aggregates are preformed by incubation of the monomers in the absence of any modulators. The modulator compound is then incubated with the preformed A β ₁₋₄₀ aggregates for 24 hours at 37 °C, after which time the β -AP/modulator solution is collected and its neurotoxicity evaluated as described above.

10

EXAMPLE 7: **Assay of Modulator Compound Stability in Cerebrospinal Fluid**

The stability of a modulator compound in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) can be
15 assayed in an *in vitro* assay as follows. A CSF solution is prepared containing 75%
Rhesus monkey CSF (commercially available from Northern Biomedical Research),
23% sterile phosphate buffered saline and 2% dimethylsulfoxide (v/v) (Aldrich
Chemical Co., Catalog No. 27,685-5). Test modulator compounds are added to the CSF
solution to a final concentration of 40 μ M or 15 μ M. All sample handling is carried out
20 in a laminar flow hood and test solutions are maintained at 37 °C during the assay. After
24 hours, enzymatic activity in the solutions is quenched by adding acetonitrile to
produce a final concentration of 25% (v/v). Samples (at the 0 time point and the 24 hour
time point) are analyzed at room temperature using reverse-phase HPLC. A microbore
column is used to maximize sensitivity. The parameters for analytical HPLC are as
25 follows:

Solvent System

A: 0.1% Trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) in water (v/v)

B: 0.085% TFA/Acetonitrile, 1% H₂O (v/v)

30

- 69 -

Injection and Gradient

Inject: 100-250 μ L of test sample

Run: 10% for B for 5 min., then 10-70% B over 60 min.

5 Chromatographic analysis is performed using a Hewlett Packard 1090 series II HPLC. The column used for separation is a C4, 5 μ m, 1 x 250 mm (Vydac #214TP51). The flow rate is 50 μ L/min and the elution profile of the test compounds is monitored at 214, 230, 260 and 280 nm.

10 **EXAMPLE 8:** **Brain Uptake Assay**

Brain levels of our A β -derived peptides were determined in the rat following intravenous administration. Under ketamine/xylazine anesthesia male Sprague-Dawley rats (219-302g) received an intravenous injection via a catheter inserted in the left 15 jugular vein (dose volume of 4 mL/kg administered over 1 minute) The actual dose administered of each compound tested is shown in Figure 1.

At 60 minutes post administration the left common carotid artery was cannulated to enable perfusion of the left forebrain to remove cerebral blood. The left forebrain, void of blood was subjected to capillary depletion as described by (Triguero et al. (1990) 20 *J. Neurochem.* 54:1882-1888). This established technique separates brain vasculature from the parenchyma and, thus, allows the accurate determination of the concentration of compound under investigation that has traversed the blood brain barrier. The amount of parent compound that was present within the brain was determined by LC/MS/MS.

The above-described assay was used to measure the brain uptake of the 25 following modulators:

- 70 -

Compounds	PPI	Structure	mwt	Dose	
				Conc (mg/mL)	mg/kg IV
1324		TFA. H-(l-[F ₅]f-vl)-NH ₂	841	1.20	4.9
1318		TFA. H-(lf-D-Cha-vl)-NH ₂	757	0.29	1.0
1319		TFA. H-(lf-[p-F]f-vl)-NH ₂	769	1.70	6.6
1327		TFA. H-(l-[p-F]f-[p-F]f-vl)-NH ₂	787	0.98	4.0
1301		TFA. H-(lvf-D-Cha-l)-NH ₂	757	0.70	2.9
1302		TFA. H-(lvf-[p-F]f-l)-NH ₂	769	0.19	0.7
1328		TFA. H-(l-[F ₅]f-[F ₅]f-vl)-NH ₂	931	0.29	1.2
1322		TFA. H-(l-D-Cha-fvl)-NH ₂	757	0.03	0.1
1303		TFA. H-(lvf-[F ₅]f-l)-NH ₂	841	0.27	1.0
1326		TFA. H-(l-D-Cha-D-Cha-vl)-NH ₂	763	0.05	0.2
1320		TFA. H-(lf-[F ₅]f-vl)-NH ₂	841	0.70	3.0

*The lower letter notation refers to a D-configuration.

The results are summarized in Figure 1.

5 The β -amyloid modulator compounds described herein are summarized in the following Table.

TABLE IV

PPI#	Description	SEQ ID NO
803	TFA•N,N-dimethyl-(Gaffvl)-NH ₂	
913	TFA•N,N-dimethyl-(affvl)-NH ₂	
918	TFA•H-(l-[Me]v-ffa)-NH ₂	
968	TFA•N-methyl-(Gaffvl)-NH ₂	
969	TFA•N-ethyl-(Gaffvl)-NH ₂	
970	TFA•N-isopropyl-(Gaffvl)-NH ₂	
992	TFA•H-(lvffa)-isopropylamide	
993	TFA•H-(lvffa)-dimethylamide	
1005	TFA•N,N-diethyl-(Gaffvl)-NH ₂	
1006	TFA•N,N-diethyl-(affvl)-NH ₂	
1007	TFA•N,N-dimethyl-(lvffl)-NH ₂	
1008	TFA•N,N-dimethyl-(lffvl)-NH ₂	
1013	TFA•H-(Glvffl)-NH ₂	
1017	TFA•N-ethyl-(Glvffl)-NH ₂	
1018	TFA•N-ethyl-(Glffvl)-NH ₂	
1020	TFA•N-methyl-(lffvl)-NH ₂	
1022	TFA•N-ethyl-(lvffl)-NH ₂	
1025	TFA•N-propyl-(lvffl)-NH ₂	
1028	TFA•N,N-diethyl-(Glvffl)-NH ₂	
1038	TFA•H-(ivffi)-NH ₂	
1039	TFA•H-(ivffa)-NH ₂	
1040	TFA•H-(iiffi)-NH ₂	
1041	TFA•H-(D-Nle-vffa)-NH ₂	
1042	TFA•H-(D-Nle-vff- D-Nle)-NH ₂	
1088	TFA•1-piperidine-acetyl-(lvffl)-NH ₂	
1089	TFA•1-piperidine-acetyl-(lffvl)-NH ₂	
1093	TFA•H-lvffl-isopropylamide	

- 72 -

1094	TFA•H-lffvl-isopropylamide	
1179	TFA•H-(lvffl)-methylamide	
1180	TFA•H-(lffvl)-methylamide	
1261	TFA•H-(lvffl)-OH	
1019	TFA•N-methyl-(lvffl)-NH ₂	
1301	TFA•H-(lvf-D-Cha-l)-NH ₂	
1302	TFA•H-(lvf-[p-F]f-l)-NH ₂	
1303	TFA•H-(lvf-[F ₅]f-l)-NH ₂	
1306	N-methyl-(lvf-D-Cha-l)-NH ₂	
1307	N-methyl-(lvf-[p-F]f-l)-NH ₂	
1308	N-methyl-(lvf-[F ₅]f-l)-NH ₂	
1318	TFA•H-(lf-D-Cha-vl)-NH ₂	
1319	TFA•H-(lf-[p-F]f-vl)-NH ₂	
1320	TFA•H-(lf-[F ₅]f-vl)-NH ₂	
1321	2TFA•H-(lfkvl)-NH ₂	
1322	TFA•H-(l-D-Cha-fvl)-NH ₂	
1323	TFA•H-(l-[p-F]f-fvl)-NH ₂	
1324	TFA•H-(l-[F ₅]f-fvl)-NH ₂	
1325	2TFA•H-(lkfvl)-NH ₂	
1326	TFA•H-(l-D-Cha-D-Cha-vl)-NH ₂	
1327	TFA•H-(l-[p-F]f-[p-F]f-vl)-NH ₂	
1328	TFA•H-(l-[F ₅]f-[F ₅]f-vl)-NH ₂	
1329	3 TFA•H-(lkkvl)-NH ₂	
1125	2 TFA•H-lvf-NH-NH-fvl-H	
1133	TFA•H-lvf-NH-NH-Acetyl	
1155	TFA•H-lvf-NH-NH ₂	

EQUIVALENTS

Those skilled in the art will recognize, or be able to ascertain using no more than routine experimentation, many equivalents to the specific embodiments of the invention

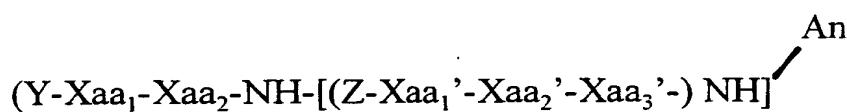
- 73 -

described herein. Such equivalents are intended to be encompassed by the following claims.

We claim:

1. A compound comprising the structure:

5



wherein Xaa_1 and Xaa_2 are each D-amino acid structures and at least two of Xaa_1 and Xaa_2 are, independently, selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-phenylalanine structure, a D-tyrosine structure, a D-iodotyrosine structure, 10 a D-lysine structure, or a D-valine structure;

$NH-NH$ is a hydrazine structure;

Y , which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula $(Xaa)_a$, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and a is an integer from 1 to 15;

15 Xaa_1' , Xaa_2' , and Xaa_3' which may or may not be present, are each D-amino acid or L-amino acid structures and at least two of Xaa_1' , Xaa_2' , and Xaa_3' are, independently, selected from the group consisting of a D- or L-leucine structure, a D- or L-phenylalanine structure, a D- or L-tyrosine structure, a D- or L-iodotyrosine structure, a D- or L-lysine structure, or a D- or L-valine structure;

20 Z , which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula $(Xaa)_b$, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and b is an integer from 1 to 15;

A , which may or may not be present, is a modifying group attached directly or indirectly to the compound; and

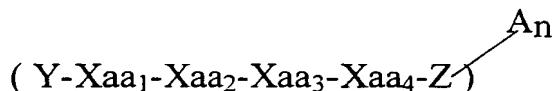
n is an integer from 1 to 15;

25 wherein Xaa_1 , Xaa_2 , Xaa_1' , Xaa_2' , Xaa_3' , Y , Z , A and n are selected such that the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides, and is less prone to metabolism.

- 75 -

2. A compound having a structure selected from the group consisting of: H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-(H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-)NH; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH-COCH₃; and H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH₂.

5 3. A compound comprising the structure:



wherein Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃ and Xaa₄ are each D-amino acid structures and at least 10 two of Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃ and Xaa₄ are, independently, selected from the group consisting of a D-leucine structure, a D-cyclohexylalanine, a D-4-fluorophenylalanine (para-fluorophenylalanine), a D-pentafluorophenylalanine, a chlorophenylalanine, a bromophenylalanine, a nitrophenylalanine, a D-homophenylalanine, a D-lysine structure, and a D-valine structure;

15 Y, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_a, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and a is an integer from 1 to 15;

Z, which may or may not be present, is a structure having the formula (Xaa)_b, wherein Xaa is any D-amino acid structure and b is an integer from 1 to 15;

20 A, which may or may not be present, is a modifying group attached directly or indirectly to the compound; and

n is an integer from 1 to 15;

wherein Xaa₁, Xaa₂, Xaa₃, Xaa₄, Y, Z, A and n are selected such that the compound binds to natural β -amyloid peptides or modulates the aggregation or inhibits the neurotoxicity of natural β -amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural β -amyloid peptides, and is less prone to metabolism.

4. A compound having a structure selected from the group consisting of:

N,N-dimethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-isopropyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂;

5 H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-isopropylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-dimethylamide; N,N-diethyl-(Gly-D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-diethyl-(D-Ala-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂;

10 N,N-dimethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-ethyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-propyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N,N-diethyl-(Gly-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂;

15 H-(D-Ile-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-NH₂; H-(D-Ile-D-Ile-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ile)-NH₂; H-(D-Nle-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Ala)-NH₂; H-(D-Nle-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Nle)-NH₂; 1-piperidine-acetyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; 1-piperidine-acetyl-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu-isopropylamide; H-D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu-isopropylamide;

20 H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-methylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-methylamide; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-OH; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Val-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂;

25 H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂;

30 H-(D-Leu-D-Lys-D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Cha-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-[p-F]Phe-D-[p-F]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-(D-Leu-D-Lys-D-Lys-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Cha-D-Leu)-NH₂

D-[*p*-F]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-[F₅]Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-(H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe)-NH; H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH-COCH₃; and H-D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-NH-NH₂.

5 5. A compound having the structure: H-(D-Leu-D-Phe-[*p*-F]D-Phe-D-Val-D-Leu)-NH₂,

6. A compound having the structure: N-methyl-(D-Leu-D-Val-D-Phe-D-Phe-D-Leu)-NH₂

10 7. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of the compound of any of claims 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

15 8. A method for inhibiting aggregation of natural β -amyloid peptides, comprising contacting the natural β -amyloid peptides with the compound of any of claims 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 such that aggregation of the natural β -amyloid peptides is inhibited.

20 9. A method for detecting the presence or absence of natural β -amyloid peptides in a biological sample, comprising:
contacting a biological sample with the compound of any of claims 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, wherein the compound is labeled with a detectable substance; and
detecting the compound bound to natural β -amyloid peptides to thereby detect
25 the presence or absence of natural β -amyloid peptides in the biological sample.

10. The method of claim 9, wherein the β -amyloid modulator compound and the biological sample are contacted *in vitro*.

- 78 -

11. The method of claim 9, wherein the β -amyloid modulator compound is contacted with the biological sample by administering the β -amyloid modulator compound to a subject.

5 12. The method of claim 9, wherein the compound is labeled with radioactive technetium or radioactive iodine.

13. A method for treating a subject for a disorder associated with β -amyloidosis, comprising:

10 administering to the subject a therapeutically effective amount of the compound of any of claims 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 such that the subject is treated for a disorder associated with β -amyloidosis.

14. The method of claim 13, wherein the disorder is Alzheimer's disease.

15

1/2

MAX SOLUBILITY							UNIT DOSE (2 mg/kg IV)						
PPI	BU#	STRUCTURE	MW	CONC (mg/ml)	DOSE mg/kg IV	BRAIN LEVELS (pm) individual	BRAIN LEVELS (pm) mean			ALONE (pm)	(+CSA (pm))	FOLD INCR. (+CSA	PPI
							mean	sem	sem				
558	67	I-v-f-a 4-hydroxybenzoyl-[Mfd]-NH ₂	714	0.8	3.3		3.3	1.4		2	14	14	558
655	75	TFA, I-v-f-f-I	750	1.0	4.6	3.8, 2.6, 17.3	7.9	5.8	50	3	22	22	655
1019	70	TFA, N-methyl-[Mfd]-NH ₂	765	0.8	3.4	6.5, 7.1, 8.0	7.2	0.5	29	2	17	17	1019
578	75	TFA, I-f-f-v-I	750	1.6	7.0	11.6, 5.7, 5.4	7.6	2.5	57	8	2	16	578
1320	77	TFA, H-[I]-[F]-[F]-v-NH ₂	841	0.7	3.0	4.0, 5.7, 6.3	5.3	0.8		16	2	10	3
1324	77	TFA, H-[I]-[F]-[F]-v-NH ₂	841	1.2	4.9	1.9, 2.3, 8.2	4.1	2.5		23	5	2	9
1318	77	TFA, H-[I]-[cho]-v-NH ₂	757	0.3	1.0	3.1, 2.9, 1.5	2.5	0.6		3	0	5	5
1319	77	TFA, H-[I]-[p-F]-v-NH ₂	769	1.7	6.6	26.4, 67.2, 11.2	34.9	20.5		32	10	11	10
1327	77	TFA, H-[I]-[p-F]-[p-F]-v-NH ₂	787	1.0	4.0	4.9, 5.5, 5.4	5.3	0.2		20	7	3	10
1301	77	TFA, H-[M-[cho]-I]-NH ₂	757	0.7	2.9	3.5, 3.7, 2.8	3.3	0.4		11	1	2	8
1302	77	TFA, H-[M-[p-F]-I]-NH ₂	769	0.2	0.7	2.6, 0.3, 1.2	1.3	0.8		4	1	4	12
1328	77	TFA, H-[F]-[F]-v-NH ₂	931	0.3	1.2	1.1, 0.7, 1.4	1.0	0.2		7	1	2	11
1322	77	TFA, H-[I]-[cho]-f-NH ₂	757	0.03	0.1	0.2, 0.1, 0.3	0.2	0.1		1	0	*	3
1303	77	TFA, H-[M-[F]-I]-NH ₂	841	0.3	1.0	0.6, 0.6, 1.3	0.8	0.3		4	0	2	7
1326	77	TFA, H-[I]-[cho]-[cho]-v-NH ₂	763	0.05	0.2	0.6, 1.0, 1.0	0.9	0.2		2	0	*	8

* COMPUTED VALUES FROM DO AREA, 100

Fig. 1

2/2

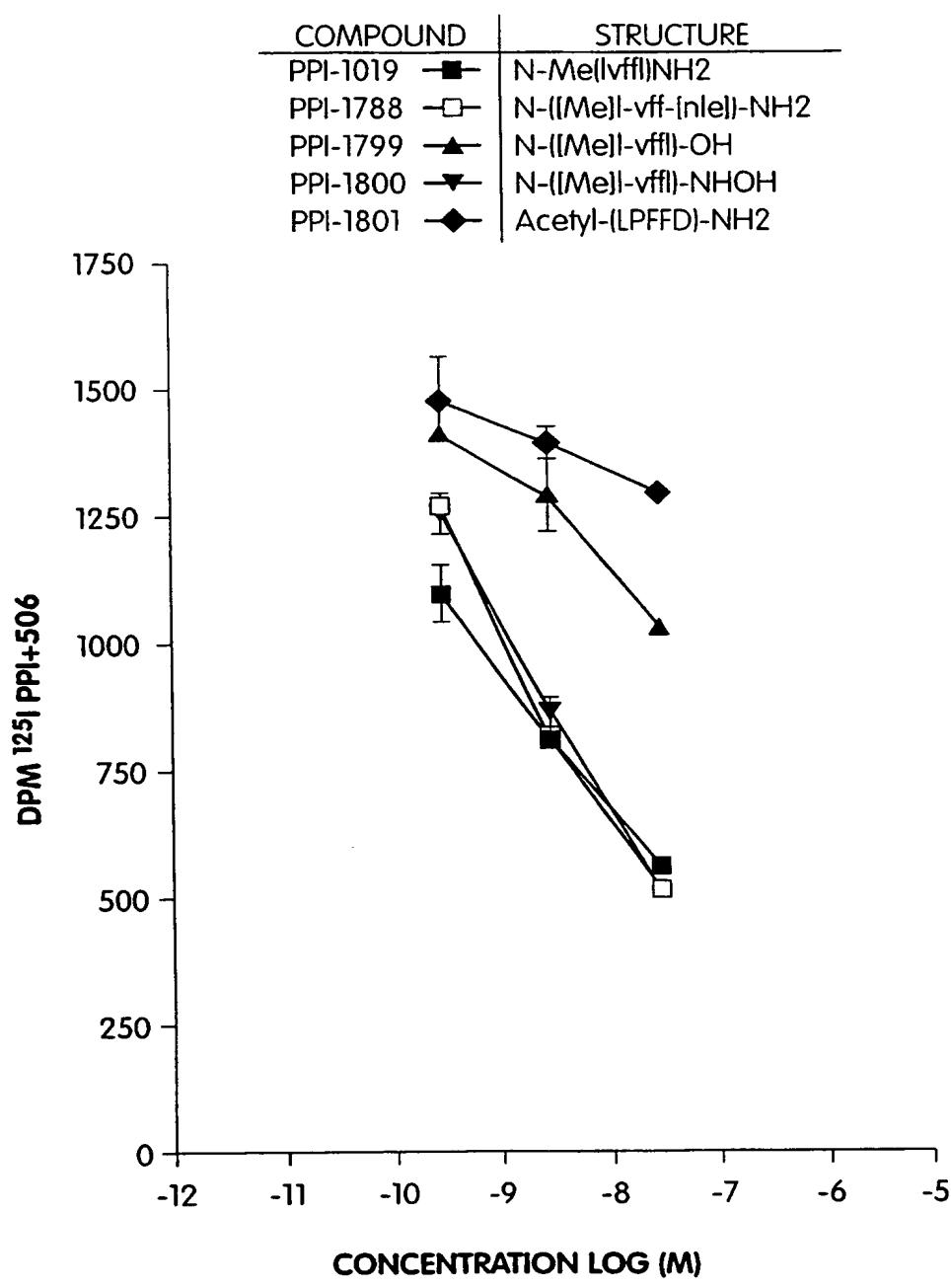


Fig. 2

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int'l. J. onal Application No
PCT/US 00/05574

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 7 C07K14/47 A61K38/17 G01N33/68 A61P25/28

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC 7 C07K A61K G01N

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

CHEM ABS Data, WPI Data, PAJ, BIOSIS, MEDLINE, EPO-Internal

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 98 08868 A (PRAECIS PHARM INC) 5 March 1998 (1998-03-05) the whole document ---	3-14
X	TJERNBERG L O ET AL: "CONTROLLING AMYLOID BETA-PEPTIDE FIBRIL FORMATION WITH PROTEASE-STABLE LIGANDS" JOURNAL OF BIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY, US, AMERICAN SOCIETY OF BIOLOGICAL CHEMISTS, BALTIMORE, MD, vol. 272, no. 19, 9 May 1997 (1997-05-09), pages 12601-12605, XP002050230 ISSN: 0021-9258 See especially Fig.4 ---	3,4,7-14
A	WO 96 28471 A (PHARM PEPTIDES INC) 19 September 1996 (1996-09-19) the whole document ---	1-14 -/-

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

7 August 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

23/08/2000

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl.
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Groenendijk, M

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 00/05574

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	<p>WO 97 21728 A (KAROLINSKA INNOVATIONS AB ';NORDSTEDT CHRISTER (SE); NAEGLUND JAN () 19 June 1997 (1997-06-19) the whole document -----</p>	1-14
P, X	<p>FINDEIS E.A.: "Modified peptide inhibitors of amyloid -beta-peptide polymerization" BIOCHEMISTRY, vol. 38, no. 21, 25 May 1999 (1999-05-25), page 6791-6800 XP002143947 EASTON, PA US see esp.page 6794, table 1 -----</p>	3,7-14

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/US 00 05574

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

This International Searching Authority found multiple (groups of) inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. Claims: 1,2(complete),4,7-14(partially)

Compounds having the structure defined in claim 1, their compositions and use

2. Claims: 3,5,6(complete),4,7-14(partially)

Compounds having the structure defined in claim 3, their compositions and use

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/US 00 05574

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

Continuation of Box I.2

Claims Nos.: 1,3,7-14(partially)

Present claims 1 and 3 relate to peptides having 2-35 amino acid residues, lacking any constant structural domain and almost any definition of the constituting amino acid residues, which peptides are defined by reference to desirable characteristics or properties, namely that they bind to natural beta-amyloid peptides or modulate the aggregation or inhibit the neurotoxicity of natural beta-amyloid peptides when contacted with the natural beta-amyloid peptides and are less prone to metabolism.

The claims cover all compounds having these characteristics or properties, whereas the application provides support within the meaning of Article 6 PCT and/or disclosure within the meaning of Article 5 PCT for only a very limited number of such compounds. In the present case, the claims so lack support, and the application so lacks disclosure, that a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope is impossible. Independent of the above reasoning, the claims also lack clarity (Article 6 PCT). An attempt is made to define the compounds by reference to a result to be achieved. Again, this lack of clarity in the present case is such as to render a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope impossible. Consequently, the search has been carried out for those parts of the claims which appear to be clear, supported and disclosed, namely those parts relating to the compounds defined in the claims 2,4-6.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 00/05574

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)			Publication date
WO 9808868	A 05-03-1998	AU 4204797 A			19-03-1998
		EP 0929574 A			21-07-1999
		US 5985242 A			16-11-1999
WO 9628471	A 19-09-1996	US 5817626 A			06-10-1998
		US 5854215 A			29-12-1998
		AU 5252496 A			02-10-1996
		CA 2214247 A			19-09-1996
		EP 0815134 A			07-01-1998
		JP 11514333 T			07-12-1999
		US 5854204 A			29-12-1998
		US 5985242 A			16-11-1999
WO 9721728	A 19-06-1997	AU 1072897 A			03-07-1997
		EP 0866805 A			30-09-1998